

# The Zork I Z-machine Interpreter

Robert Baruch

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Zork I</b>	<b>7</b>
1.1	Introduction . . . . .	7
1.2	About this document . . . . .	7
1.3	Extracting the sections . . . . .	8
<b>2</b>	<b>Programming techniques</b>	<b>9</b>
2.1	Zero page temporaries . . . . .	9
2.2	Tail calls . . . . .	9
2.3	Unconditional branches . . . . .	9
2.4	Stretchy branches . . . . .	10
2.5	Shared code . . . . .	10
2.6	Macros . . . . .	10
2.6.1	STOW, STOW2 . . . . .	10
2.6.2	MOVB, MOVW, STOB . . . . .	11
2.6.3	PSHW, PULB, PULW . . . . .	12
2.6.4	INCW . . . . .	13
2.6.5	ADDA, ADDAC, ADDB, ADDB2, ADDW, ADDWC . . . . .	14
2.6.6	SUBB, SUBB2, SUBW . . . . .	16
2.6.7	ROLW, RORW . . . . .	17

<b>3</b>	<b>The boot process</b>	<b>19</b>
3.1	BOOT1 . . . . .	19
3.2	BOOT2 . . . . .	24
<b>4</b>	<b>The main program</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>The Z-stack</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>Z-code</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>I/O</b>	<b>49</b>
7.1	Strings and output . . . . .	49
7.1.1	The Apple II text screen . . . . .	49
7.1.2	The text buffer . . . . .	52
7.1.3	Z-coded strings . . . . .	62
7.1.4	Input . . . . .	73
7.1.5	Lexical parsing . . . . .	75
<b>8</b>	<b>Arithmetic routines</b>	<b>97</b>
8.1	Negation and sign manipulation . . . . .	97
8.2	16-bit multiplication . . . . .	100
8.3	16-bit division . . . . .	101
8.4	16-bit comparison . . . . .	104
8.5	Other routines . . . . .	105
8.6	Printing numbers . . . . .	106
<b>9</b>	<b>Disk routines</b>	<b>108</b>

<b>10 The instruction dispatcher</b>	<b>112</b>
10.1 Executing an instruction . . . . .	112
10.2 Retrieving the instruction . . . . .	115
10.3 Decoding the instruction . . . . .	116
10.3.1 0op instructions . . . . .	116
10.3.2 1op instructions . . . . .	117
10.3.3 2op instructions . . . . .	119
10.3.4 varop instructions . . . . .	121
10.4 Getting the instruction operands . . . . .	123
<b>11 Calls and returns</b>	<b>128</b>
11.1 Call . . . . .	128
11.2 Return . . . . .	132
<b>12 Objects</b>	<b>135</b>
12.1 Object table format . . . . .	135
12.2 Getting an object's address . . . . .	135
12.3 Removing an object . . . . .	137
12.4 Object strings . . . . .	140
12.5 Object attributes . . . . .	141
12.6 Object properties . . . . .	143
<b>13 Saving and restoring the game</b>	<b>146</b>
13.0.1 Save prompts for the user . . . . .	146
13.0.2 Saving the game state . . . . .	152
13.0.3 Restoring the game state . . . . .	155

<b>14 Instructions</b>	<b>159</b>
14.1 Instruction utilities . . . . .	161
14.1.1 Handling branches . . . . .	164
14.2 Data movement instructions . . . . .	168
14.2.1 load . . . . .	168
14.2.2 loadw . . . . .	168
14.2.3 loadb . . . . .	169
14.2.4 store . . . . .	169
14.2.5 storew . . . . .	170
14.2.6 storeb . . . . .	171
14.3 Stack instructions . . . . .	171
14.3.1 pop . . . . .	171
14.3.2 pull . . . . .	172
14.3.3 push . . . . .	172
14.4 Decrements and increments . . . . .	172
14.4.1 inc . . . . .	172
14.4.2 dec . . . . .	173
14.5 Arithmetic instructions . . . . .	173
14.5.1 add . . . . .	173
14.5.2 div . . . . .	174
14.5.3 mod . . . . .	175
14.5.4 mul . . . . .	176
14.5.5 random . . . . .	177
14.5.6 sub . . . . .	177
14.6 Logical instructions . . . . .	178
14.6.1 and . . . . .	178

14.6.2	not	178
14.6.3	or	179
14.7	Conditional branch instructions	179
14.7.1	dec_chk	179
14.7.2	inc_chk	180
14.7.3	je	180
14.7.4	jg	182
14.7.5	jin	182
14.7.6	jl	183
14.7.7	jz	183
14.7.8	test	184
14.7.9	test_attr	184
14.8	Jump and subroutine instructions	185
14.8.1	call	185
14.8.2	jump	185
14.8.3	print_ret	185
14.8.4	ret	186
14.8.5	ret_popped	186
14.8.6	rfalse	186
14.8.7	rtrue	187
14.9	Print instructions	187
14.9.1	new_line	187
14.9.2	print	188
14.9.3	print_addr	188
14.9.4	print_char	188
14.9.5	print_num	189

14.9.6	print_obj	189
14.9.7	print_paddr	189
14.10	Object instructions	190
14.10.1	clear_attr	190
14.10.2	get_child	191
14.10.3	get_next_prop	192
14.10.4	get_parent	193
14.10.5	get_prop	194
14.10.6	get_prop_addr	197
14.10.7	get_prop_len	198
14.10.8	get_sibling	199
14.10.9	insert_obj	200
14.10.10	put_prop	201
14.10.11	remove_obj	202
14.10.12	set_attr	202
14.11	Other instructions	203
14.11.1	nop	203
14.11.2	restart	203
14.11.3	restore	204
14.11.4	quit	204
14.11.5	save	204
14.11.6	sread	204
<b>15</b>	<b>The entire program</b>	<b>205</b>
<b>16</b>	<b>Defined Chunks</b>	<b>215</b>
<b>17</b>	<b>Appendix: RWTS</b>	<b>220</b>

August 4, 2024

main.nw 7

**18 Index**

**235**



# Chapter 1

## Zork I

### 1.1 Introduction

**Zork I: The Great Underground Empire** was an Infocom text adventure originally written as part of Zork in 1977 by Tim Anderson, Marc Blank, Bruce Daniels, and Dave Lebling. The game runs under a virtual machine called the Z-Machine. Thus, only the Z-Machine interpreter needed to be ported for the game to be playable on various machines.

The purpose of this document is to reverse engineer the Z-Machine interpreter found in the revision 15 version of Zork I for the Apple II. The disk image used is from the Internet Archive:

- [Zork I, revision 15 \(ZorkI\\_r15.4amCrack\)](#)

The original Infocom assembly language files are [available](#). The directory for the Apple II contains the original source code for various Z-Machine interpreters. Version 3 is called ZIP, version 4 is EZIP, version 5 is XZIP, and version 6 is YZIP. There is also a directory OLDZIP which seems to correspond to this version, version 2, although there are a few differences.

### 1.2 About this document

All files can be found on [Github](#).

The source for this document, `main.nw`, is a literate programming document. This means the explanatory text is interspersed with source code. The assembly code and `LaTeX` file can be extracted from the document and compiled.

The goal is to provide all the source code necessary to reproduce a binary identical to the one found on the Internet Archive's `ZorkI_r15_4amCrack` disk image.

The code was reverse-engineered using Ghidra.

The assembly code was assembled using `dasm`.

The document is written in `LaTeX`.

This document doesn't explain every last detail. It's assumed that the reader can find enough details on the 6502 processor and the Apple II series of computers to fill in the gaps.

## 1.3 Extracting the sections

The disk image contains the following sections. Note that the disk has 16 sectors per track, and we will refer to tracks and sectors only by `16 * track + sector`.

- Sector 0: `B00T1`, target address `$0800`: The first stage boot loader.
- Sector 0-9: `B00T2`, target address `$2200`: The second stage boot loader.
- Sector 16-41: `main`, target address `$0800`: The main program.

The sections can be extracted from the disk image using the following commands:

```
python -m extract --first 0 -n 1 -i "Zork I r15 (4am crack).dsk" -o boot1.bin
python -m extract --first 0 -n 10 -i "Zork I r15 (4am crack).dsk" -o boot2.bin
python -m extract --first 16 -n 26 -i "Zork I r15 (4am crack).dsk" -o main.bin
```

## Chapter 2

# Programming techniques

### 2.1 Zero page temporaries

Zero-page consists essentially of global variables. Sometimes we need local temporaries, and Apple II programs mostly doesn't use the stack for those. Rather, some "global" variables are reserved for temporaries. You might see multiple symbols equated to a single zero-page location. The names of such symbols are used to make sense within their context.

### 2.2 Tail calls

Rather than a `JSR` immediately followed by an `RTS`, instead a `JMP` can be used to save stack space, code space, and time. This is known as a tail call, because it is a call that happens at the tail of a function.

### 2.3 Unconditional branches

The 6502 doesn't have an unconditional short jump. However, if you can find a condition that is always true, this can serve as an unconditional short jump, which saves space and time.

## 2.4 Stretchy branches

6502 branches have a limit to how far they can jump. If they really need to jump farther than that, you have to put a **JMP** or an unconditional branch within reach.

## 2.5 Shared code

To save space, sometimes code at the end of one function is also useful to the next function, as long as it is within reach. This can save space, at the expense of functions being completely independent.

## 2.6 Macros

The original Infocom source code uses macros for moving data around, and we will adopt these macros (with different names) and more to make our assembly language listings a little less verbose.

### 2.6.1 STOW, STOW2

STOW stores a 16-bit literal value to a memory location.

For example, **STOW #01FF, 0200** stores the 16-bit value **#01FF** to memory location **0200** (of course in little-endian order).

This is the same as **MOVEI** in the original Infocom source code.

```

10  <Macros 10>≡ (205 206a) 11a>
      MACRO STOW
          LDA    #{1}
          STA    {2}
          LDA    #{1}
          STA    {2}+1
      ENDM

```

Defines:

**STOW**, used in chunks 29–31, 56, 100, 103, 106, 110, 111, 116b, 118b, 120c, 122, 128, 133b, 142a, 146, 148, 150–54, 156b, 157a, and 204.

STOW2 does the same, but in the opposite order. Parts of the code were written by different programmers at different times, so it's possible that the MOVEI macro was used inconsistently.

```
11a  <Macros 10>+≡ (205 206a) <10 11b>
      MACRO STOW2
          LDA    #>{1}
          STA    {2}+1
          LDA    #<{1}
          STA    {2}
      ENDM
```

Defines:

STOW2, used in chunk 111.

## 2.6.2 MOVW, MOVW, STOB

MOVW moves a byte from one memory location to another, while STOB stores a literal byte to a memory location. The implementation is identical, and the only difference is documentation.

For example, MOVW \$01, \$0200 moves the byte at memory location \$01 to memory location \$0200, while STOB #\$01, \$0200 stores the byte #\$01 to memory location \$0200.

These macros are the same as MOVE in the original Infocom source code.

```
11b  <Macros 10>+≡ (205 206a) <11a 12a>
      MACRO MOVW
          LDA    {1}
          STA    {2}
      ENDM
      MACRO STOB
          LDA    {1}
          STA    {2}
      ENDM
```

Defines:

MOVW, used in chunks 21d, 36, 86a, 129a, 131–33, and 184a.

STOB, used in chunks 20c, 25a, 29, 30b, 64, 106, 115, 117d, 120a, 129a, 131a, and 134.

MOVW moves a 16-bit value from one memory location to the another.

For example, MOVW \$01FF, \$A000 moves the 16-bit value at memory location \$01FF to memory location \$A000.

This is the same as MOVEW in the original Infocom source code.

12a     $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (205 206a) <11b 12b>

```

        MACRO MOVW
            LDA    {1}
            STA    {2}
            LDA    {1}+1
            STA    {2}+1
        ENDM

```

Defines:

MOVW, used in chunks 31b, 100, 103, 115, 117d, 119, 129a, 131–34, 140, 154b, 157b, 169b, 172b, 174–77, 179b, 180a, 182a, 183a, 185a, 186a, 188, 189, and 196.

### 2.6.3 PSHW, PULB, PULW

PSHW is a macro that pushes a 16-bit value in memory onto the 6502 stack.

For example, PSHW \$01FF pushes the 16-bit value at memory location \$01FF onto the 6502 stack.

This is the same as PUSHW in the original Infocom source code.

12b     $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (205 206a) <12a 12c>

```

        MACRO PSHW
            LDA    {1}
            PHA
            LDA    {1}+1
            PHA
        ENDM

```

Defines:

PSHW, used in chunks 100, 103, 163a, and 200.

PULB is a macro that pulls an 8-bit value from the 6502 stack to memory.

For example, PULB \$01FF pulls an 8-bit value from the 6502 stack and stores it at memory location \$01FF.

12c     $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (205 206a) <12b 13a>

```

        MACRO PULB
            PLA
            STA    {1}
        ENDM

```

Defines:

PULB, used in chunk 131b.

PULW is a macro that pulls a 16-bit value from the 6502 stack to memory.

For example, PULW \$01FF pulls a 16-bit value from the 6502 stack and stores it at memory location \$01FF.

This is the same as PULLW in the original Infocom source code.

13a  $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (205 206a)  $\langle 12c \ 13b \rangle$

```

    MACRO PULW
        PLA
        STA    {1}+1
        PLA
        STA    {1}
    ENDM

```

Defines:

PULW, used in chunks 100, 103, 163a, and 200.

## 2.6.4 INCW

INCW is a macro that increments a 16-bit value in memory.

For example, INCW \$01FF increments the 16-bit value at memory location \$01FF.

This is the same as INCW in the original Infocom source code.

13b  $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (205 206a)  $\langle 13a \ 14a \rangle$

```

    MACRO INCW
        INC    {1}
        BNE    .continue
        INC    {1}+1
    .continue
    ENDM

```

Defines:

INCW, used in chunks 38, 110, 111, 140, 141, 163a, 177a, and 197.

## 2.6.5 ADDA, ADDAC, ADDB, ADDB2, ADDW, ADDWC

ADDA is a macro that adds the A register to a 16-bit memory location.

For example, `ADDA $01FF` adds the contents of the A register to the 16-bit value at memory location `$01FF`.

14a  $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (205 206a)  $\triangleleft 13b \ 14b \triangleright$

```

MACRO ADDA
    CLC
    ADC    {1}
    STA    {1}
    BCC    .continue
    INC    {1}+1
    .continue
ENDM

```

Defines:

ADDA, used in chunks 93 and 133b.

ADDAC is a macro that adds the A register, and whatever the carry flag is set to, to a 16-bit memory location.

14b  $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (205 206a)  $\triangleleft 14a \ 15a \triangleright$

```

MACRO ADDAC
    ADC    {1}
    STA    {1}
    BCC    .continue
    INC    {1}+1
    .continue
ENDM

```

Defines:

ADDAC, used in chunk 197.



ADDB is a macro that adds an 8-bit immediate value, or the 8-bit contents of memory, to a 16-bit memory location.

For example, `ADDB $01FF, #$01` adds the immediate value `#$01` to the 16-bit value at memory location `$01FF`, while `ADDB $01FF, $0300` adds the 8-bit value at memory location `$0300` to the 16-bit value at memory location `$01FF`.

This is the same as `ADDB` in the original Infocom source code. The immediate value is the second argument.

15a     $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (205 206a)  $\langle 14b \ 15b \rangle$

```

        MACRO  ADDB
            LDA    {1}
            CLC
            ADC     {2}
            STA     {1}
            BCC     .continue
            INC     {1}+1
        .continue
        ENDM

```

Defines:

ADDB, used in chunks 148 and 150b.

ADDB2 is the same as `ADDB` except that it swaps the initial `CLC` and `LDA` instructions.

15b     $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (205 206a)  $\langle 15a \ 15c \rangle$

```

        MACRO  ADDB2
            CLC
            LDA    {1}
            ADC     {2}
            STA     {1}
            BCC     .continue
            INC     {1}+1
        .continue
        ENDM

```

Defines:

ADDB2, used in chunks 94 and 95.

ADDW is a macro that adds two 16-bit values in memory and stores it to a third 16-bit memory location.

15c     $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (205 206a)  $\langle 15b \ 16a \rangle$

```

        MACRO  ADDW
            CLC
            ADDWC  {1}, {2}, {3}
        ENDM

```

Defines:

ADDW, used in chunks 75, 92, 143, 168–71, and 173b.

Uses `ADDWC` 16a.

ADDWC is a macro that adds two 16-bit values in memory, plus the carry bit, and stores it to a third 16-bit memory location.

16a      $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (205 206a) <15c 16b>

```

        MACRO ADDWC
            LDA    {1}
            ADC    {2}
            STA    {3}
            LDA    {1}+1
            ADC    {2}+1
            STA    {3}+1
        ENDM

```

Defines:

ADDWC, used in chunks 15c and 100.

## 2.6.6 SUBB, SUBB2, SUBW

SUBB is a macro that subtracts an 8-bit value from a 16-bit memory location. This is the same as SUBB in the original Infocom source code. The immediate value is the second argument.

16b      $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (205 206a) <16a 17a>

```

        MACRO SUBB
            LDA    {1}
            SEC
            SBC    {2}
            STA    {1}
            BCS    .continue
            DEC    {1}+1
        .continue
        ENDM

```

Defines:

SUBB, used in chunks 37, 95, 133c, 163b, 166b, and 185a.

SUBB2 is the same as SUBB except that it swaps the initial SEC and LDA instructions.

17a  $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (205 206a)  $\langle 16b \ 17b \rangle$

```

    MACRO SUBB2
        SEC
        LDA    {1}
        SBC    {2}
        STA    {1}
        BCS    .continue
        DEC    {1}+1
    .continue
    ENDM

```

Defines:

SUBB2, used in chunk 94b.

SUBW is a macro that subtracts the 16-bit memory value in the second argument from a 16-bit memory location in the first argument, and stores it in the 16-bit memory location in the third argument.

17b  $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (205 206a)  $\langle 17a \ 17c \rangle$

```

    MACRO SUBW
        SEC
        LDA    {1}
        SBC    {2}
        STA    {3}
        LDA    {1}+1
        SBC    {2}+1
        STA    {3}+1
    ENDM

```

Defines:

SUBW, used in chunks 96b, 97, 177c, and 197.

## 2.6.7 ROLW, RORW

ROLW rotates a 16-bit memory location left.

17c  $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (205 206a)  $\langle 17b \ 18 \rangle$

```

    MACRO ROLW
        ROL    {1}
        ROL    {1}+1
    ENDM

```

Defines:

ROLW, used in chunk 103.

RORW rotates a 16-bit memory location right.

```
18  <Macros 10>+≡  
      MACRO RORW  
          ROR    {1}+1  
          ROR    {1}  
      ENDM
```

(205 206a) <17c

Defines:

RORW, used in chunk 100.

## Chapter 3

# The boot process

**Suggested reading:** *Beneath Apple DOS* (Don Worth, Pieter Lechner, 1982) page 5-6, [“What happens during booting”](#).

We will only examine the boot process in order to get to the main program. The boot process may just be the way the 4am disk image works, so should not be taken as original to Zork.

We will be doing a deep dive into `BOOT1`, since it is fairly easy to understand.

Apple II programs originally came on disk, and such disks are generally bootable. You’d put the disk in Drive 1, reset the computer, and the disk card ROM then loads the `BOOT1` section of the disk. This section starts from track 0 sector 0, and is almost always 1 sector (256 bytes) long. The data is stored to location `$0800` and then the disk card ROM causes the CPU to jump to location `$0801`. The very first byte in track 0 sector 0 is the number of sectors in this `BOOT1` section, and again, this is almost always 1.

After the disk card reads `BOOT1`, the zero-page location `IWMDATAPTR` is left as the pointer to the buffer to next read data into, so `$0900`. The location `IWMSLTNDX` is the disk card’s slot index (slot times 16).

### 3.1 `BOOT1`

`BOOT1` reads a number of sectors from track 0, backwards from a starting sector, down to sector 0. The sector to read is stored in `BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM`, and is initially 9 for Zork I release 15. The RAM address to read the sectors to is

stored in `BOOT1.WRITE_ADDR`, and it is `$2200`. Thus, `BOOT1` will read sectors 0 through 9 into address `$2200 - $2BFF`.

```
20a  <BOOT1 20a>≡ (205) 20b>
      BYTE    #$01 ; Number of sectors in BOOT1. Almost always 1.
      boot1:
      SUBROUTINE
```

Defines:

`boot1`, never used.

Reading `BOOT2` involves repeatedly calling the disk card ROM's sector read routine with appropriate parameters. But first, we have to initialize some variables.

The reason we have to check whether `BOOT1` has already been initialized is that the disk card ROM's `RDSECT` routine jumps back to `BOOT1` after reading a sector.

Checking for initialization is as simple as checking the `IWMDATAPTR` page against `09`. If it's `09` then we have just finished reading `BOOT1`, and this is the first call to `BOOT1`, so we need to initialize. Otherwise, we can skip initialization.

```
20b  <BOOT1 20a>+≡ (205) <20a 20c>
      LDA     IWMDATAPTR+1
      CMP     #$09
      BNE     .already_inittd
      Uses IWMDATAPTR 207.
```

To initialize the `BOOT1` variables, we first determine the disk card ROM's `RDSECT` routine address. This is simply `$CX5C`, where `X` is the disk card's slot number.

```
20c  <BOOT1 20a>+≡ (205) <20b 21a>
      LDA     IWMSLTNDX ; The slot we're booting from, times 16.
      LSR
      LSR
      LSR
      LSR
      ORA     #$C0
      STA     RDSECT_PTR+1
      STOB    #$5C, RDSECT_PTR
      Uses IWMSLTNDX 207, RDSECT_PTR 207, and STOB 11b.
```

Next, we initialize the address to read disk data into. Since we're reading backwards, we start by adding `BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM` to the page number in `BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR`.

```
21a  <BOOT1 20a>+≡ (205) <20c 21b>
      CLC
      LDA    BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR+1
      ADC    BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM
      STA    BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR+1
      Uses BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM 23b and BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR 23b.
```

Now that `BOOT1` has been initialized, we can set up the parameters for the next read. This means loading up `IWMSECTOR` with the sector in track 0 to read, `IWMDATAPTR` with the address to read data into, and loading the X register with the slot index (slot times 16).

First we check whether we've read all sectors by checking whether `BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM` is less than zero - recall that we are reading sectors from last down to 0.

```
21b  <BOOT1 20a>+≡ (205) <21a 21c>
      .already_initted:
      LDX    BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM
      BMI    .go_to_boot2      ; Are we done?
      Defines:
      .already_initted, never used.
      Uses BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM 23b.
```

We set up `IWMSECTOR` by taking the sector number and translating it to a physical sector on the disk using a translation table. This has to do with the way sectors on disk are interleaved for efficiency.

```
21c  <BOOT1 20a>+≡ (205) <21b 21d>
      LDA    BOOT1_SECTOR_XLAT_TABLE,X
      STA    IWMSECTOR
      Uses BOOT1_SECTOR_XLAT_TABLE 22b and IWMSECTOR 207.
```

Then we transfer the page of `BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR` into the page of `IWMDATAPTR`, decrement `BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM`, load up the X register with `IWMSLTNDX`, and do the read by jumping to the address in `RDSECT_PTR`. Remember that when that routine finishes, it jumps back to `boot1`.

```
21d  <BOOT1 20a>+≡ (205) <21c 22a>
      DEC    BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM
      MOVB    BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR+1, IWMDATAPTR+1
      DEC    BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR+1
      LDX    IWMSLTNDX
      JMP    (RDSECT_PTR)
      Uses BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM 23b, BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR 23b, IWMDATAPTR 207, IWMSLTNDX 207,
      MOV 11b, and RDSECT_PTR 207.
```

Once BOOT1 has finished loading, it jumps to what got loaded from sector 1. This is called BOOT2, the 2nd stage boot loader.

Note that because we read down to sector 0, and BOOT1\_WRITE\_ADDR got post-decremented, BOOT1\_WRITE\_ADDR points to one page before sector 0. Incrementing once would have it point to a copy of BOOT1, which we don't need. Therefore, we increment twice.

```

22a  <BOOT1 20a>+≡ (205) <21d 22b>
      .go_to_boot2
      INC     BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR+1
      INC     BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR+1

      ; Set keyboard and screen as I/O, set all soft switches to defaults,
      ; e.g. text mode, lores graphics, etc.

      JSR     SETKBD
      JSR     SETVID
      JSR     INIT

      ; Go to BOOT2!

      LDX     IWMSLTNDX
      JMP     (BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR)

```

Defines:

.go\_to\_boot2, never used.

Uses BOOT1\_WRITE\_ADDR 23b, INIT 207, IWMSLTNDX 207, SETKBD 207, and SETVID 207.

```

22b  <BOOT1 20a>+≡ (205) <22a 23a>
      BOOT1_SECTOR_XLAT_TABLE:
      HEX     00 0D 0B 09 07 05 03 01
      HEX     0E 0C 0A 08 06 04 02 0F

```

Defines:

BOOT1\_SECTOR\_XLAT\_TABLE, used in chunk 21c.



The rest of the data in BOOT1 seems to contain unused garbage.

```

23a  <BOOT1 20a>+≡ (205) <22b 23b>
      HEX      00 20 64
      HEX      27 B0 08 A9 00 A8 8D 5D
      HEX      36 91 40 AD C5 35 4C D2
      HEX      26 AD 5D 36 F0 08 EE BD
      HEX      35 D0 03 EE BE 35 A9 00
      HEX      8D 5D 36 4C 46 25 8D BC
      HEX      35 20 A8 26 20 EA 22 4C
      HEX      7D 22 A0 13 B1 42 D0 14
      HEX      C8 C0 17 D0 F7 A0 19 B1
      HEX      42 99 A4 35 C8 C0 1D D0
      HEX      F6 4C BC 26 A2 FF 8E 5D
      HEX      36 D0 F6 00 00 00 00 00
      HEX      00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
      HEX      00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
      HEX      00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
      HEX      20 58 FC A9 C2 20 ED FD ; seems to be part of the monitor
      HEX      A9 01 20 DA FD A9 AD 20
      HEX      ED FD A9 00 20 DA FD 60
      HEX      00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
      HEX      00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
      HEX      00 00 00 00 00

```

```

23b  <BOOT1 20a>+≡ (205) <23a
      BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR:
      HEX      00 22
      BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM:
      HEX      09

```

Defines:

BOOT1\_SECTOR\_NUM, used in chunk 21.

BOOT1\_WRITE\_ADDR, used in chunks 21 and 22a.

## 3.2 BOOT2

In normal DOS, BOOT2 is the 2nd stage boot loader. See Beneath Apple DOS, page 8-34, description of address \$B700. However in this case, it looks like the programmers modified the first page of the standard BOOT2 loader so that it instead loads the main program from disk and then jumps to it.

Zork's BOOT2 loads 26 sectors starting from track 1 sector 0 into addresses \$0800-\$21FF, and then jumps to \$0800. It also contains all the low-level disk routines from DOS, which includes RWTS, the read/write track/sector routine.

We will only look at the main part of BOOT2, not any of the low-level disk routines.

```

24  <BOOT2 24>≡ (205b) 25a>
    boot2:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA    #$1F
        STA    $7B

    .loop:
        LDA    #>boot2_iob      ; call RWTS with IOB
        LDY    #<boot2_iob
        JSR    RWTS
        BCS    .loop            ; on error, try again

        INC    sector_count
        LDA    sector_count
        CMP    #26
        BEQ    .start_main      ; done loading 26 sectors?

        INC    boot2_iob.buffer+1 ; increment page
        INC    boot2_iob.sector   ; increment sector and track
        LDA    boot2_iob.sector
        CMP    #16
        BNE    .loop

        LDA    #$00
        STA    boot2_iob.sector
        INC    boot2_iob.track
        JMP    .loop

```

Defines:

boot2, never used.

Uses RWTS 208, boot2\_iob 26a, and sector\_count 25a.

A zeroed out area:

[illegible]

The RWTS parameter list (I/O block):

```

26a  <BOOT2 24>+≡ (205b) <25b 26b>
      boot2_iob:
          ORG      $23C0

          HEX      01      ; table type, must be 1
          HEX      60      ; slot times 16
          HEX      01      ; drive number
          HEX      00      ; volume number
      boot2_iob.track:
          HEX      01      ; track number
      boot2_iob.sector:
          HEX      00      ; sector number
      boot2_iob.dct_addr:
          WORD      boot2_dct ; address of device characteristics table
      boot2_iob.buffer:
          WORD      #$0800    ; address of buffer
          HEX      00 00
      boot2_iob.command:
          HEX      01      ; command byte (read)
          HEX      00      ; return code
          HEX      00      ; last volume number
          HEX      60      ; last slot times 16
          HEX      01      ; last drive number

```

Defines:

```

boot2_iob, used in chunk 24.
boot2_iob.buffer, never used.
boot2_iob.command, never used.
boot2_iob.dct_addr, never used.
boot2_iob.sector, never used.
boot2_iob.track, never used.

```

Uses boot2\_dct 26b.

The Device Characteristics Table:

```

26b  <BOOT2 24>+≡ (205b) <26a 27>
      ORG      $23D1

      boot2_dct:
          HEX      00      ; device type, must be 0
          HEX      01      ; phases per track, must be 1
          WORD      #$D8EF  ; motor on time count

```

Defines:

```

boot2_dct, used in chunk 26a.

```

Some bytes apparently left over and unzeroed, and then zeros to the end of the page.

27     $\langle BOOT2 \text{ 24} \rangle + \equiv$  (205b) < 26b

HEX	00 00 00
HEX	00 00 00 00 00 00 DE 00
HEX	00 00 02 00 01 01 00 00
HEX	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
HEX	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
HEX	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

## Chapter 4

# The main program

This is the Z-machine proper.

We first clear out the top half of zero page (\$80-\$FF).

```
28a  <main 28a>≡ (211) 28b>
      main:
      SUBROUTINE

      CLD
      LDA      #$00
      LDY      #$80

      .clear:
      STA      $80,X
      INX
      BNE      .clear
```

Defines:

main, used in chunks 25a, 31b, 32, 42, 45, 203b, and 205b.

And we reset the 6502 stack pointer.

```
28b  <main 28a>+≡ (211) <28a 29>
      LDY      #$FF
      TXS
```

Next, we set up some variables. The printer output routine, `PRINTER_CSW`, is set to `$C100`. This is the address of the ROM of the card in slot 1, which is typically the printer card. It will be used later when outputting text to both screen and printer.

Next, we set `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID` to zero, which will later cause the Z-machine to load the first page of Z-code into memory when the first instruction is retrieved.

The z-stack count, `STACK_COUNT`, is set to 1, and the z-stack pointer, `Z_SP`, is set to `$03E8`.

There are two page tables, `PAGE_L_TABLE` and `PAGE_H_TABLE`, which are set to `$2200` and `$2280`, respectively. These are used to map Z-machine memory pages to physical memory pages.

There are two other page tables, `NEXT_PAGE_TABLE` and `PREV_PAGE_TABLE`, which are set to `$2300` and `$2380`, respectively. Together this forms a doubly-linked list of pages.

```

29  <main 28a>+≡ (211) <28b 30a>
    .set_vars:
        ; Historical note: Setting PRINTER_CSW was originally a call to SINIT,
        ; "system-dependent initialization".
        LDA    #$C1
        STA    PRINTER_CSW+1
        LDA    #$00
        STA    PRINTER_CSW
        LDA    #$00
        STA    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
        STA    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
        STOB   #$01, STACK_COUNT
        STOW   #$03E8, Z_SP
        STOB   #$FF, ZCHAR_SCRATCH1+6
        STOW   #$2200, PAGE_L_TABLE
        STOW   #$2280, PAGE_H_TABLE
        STOW   #$2300, NEXT_PAGE_TABLE
        STOW   #$2380, PREV_PAGE_TABLE
    Uses NEXT_PAGE_TABLE 208, PAGE_H_TABLE 208, PAGE_L_TABLE 208, PREV_PAGE_TABLE 208,
    PRINTER_CSW 208, STACK_COUNT 208, STOB 11b, STOW 10, ZCHAR_SCRATCH1 208,
    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID 208, ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2 208, and Z_SP 208.

```

Next, we initialize the page tables. This zeros out `PAGE_L_TABLE` and `PAGE_H_TABLE`, and then sets up the next and previous page tables. `NEXT_PAGE_TABLE` is initialized to `01 02 03 ... 7F FF` and so on, while `PREV_PAGE_TABLE` is initialized to `FF 00 01 ... 7D 7E FF`. `FF` is the null pointer for this linked list.

```

30a  <main 28a>+≡ (211) <29 30b>
      LDY      #$00
      LDX      #$80      ; Max pages

      .loop_inc_dec_tables:
      LDA      #$00
      STA      (PAGE_L_TABLE),Y
      STA      (PAGE_H_TABLE),Y
      TYA
      CLC
      ADC      #$01
      STA      (NEXT_PAGE_TABLE),Y
      TYA
      SEC
      SBC      #$01
      STA      (PREV_PAGE_TABLE),Y
      INY
      DEX
      BNE      .loop_inc_dec_tables
      DEY
      LDA      #$FF
      STA      (NEXT_PAGE_TABLE),Y

```

Uses `NEXT_PAGE_TABLE 208`, `PAGE_H_TABLE 208`, `PAGE_L_TABLE 208`, and `PREV_PAGE_TABLE 208`.

Next, we set `FIRST_Z_PAGE` to 0 (the head of the list), `LAST_Z_PAGE` to `#$7F` (the tail of the list), and `Z_HEADER_ADDR` to `$2C00`. `Z_HEADER_ADDR` is the address in memory where the Z-code image header is stored.

```

30b  <main 28a>+≡ (211) <30a 30c>
      STOB     #$00, FIRST_Z_PAGE
      STOB     #$7F, LAST_Z_PAGE
      STOW     #$2C00, Z_HEADER_ADDR

```

Uses `FIRST_Z_PAGE 208`, `LAST_Z_PAGE 208`, `STOB 11b`, and `STOW 10`.

Then we clear the screen.

```

30c  <main 28a>+≡ (211) <30b 31b>
      JSR      do_reset_window

```

Uses `do_reset_window 31a`.



```

31a  <Do reset window 31a>≡ (211)
      do_reset_window:
          JSR      reset_window
          RTS
Defines:
      do_reset_window, used in chunk 30c.
Uses reset_window 51.

```

Next, we start reading the image of Z-code from disk into memory. The first page of the image, which is the image header, gets loaded into the address stored in `Z_HEADER_ADDR`. This done through the `read_from_sector` routine, which reads the (256 byte) sector stored in `SCRATCH1`, relative to track 3 sector 0, into the address stored in `SCRATCH2`.

If there was an error reading, we jump back to the beginning of the main program and start again. This would result in a failure loop with no apparent output if the disk is damaged.

```

31b  <main 28a>+≡ (211) <30c 32>
      .read_z_image:
          MOVW     Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
          STOW     #$0000, SCRATCH1
          JSR      read_from_sector

          ; Historical note: The original Infocom source code did not check
          ; for an error here.

          BCC      .no_error
          JMP      main
Uses MOVW 12a, SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH2 208, STOW 10, main 28a, and read_from_sector 110.

```

If there was no error reading the image header, we write `#$FF` into byte 5 of the header, whose purpose is not known at this point. Then we load byte 4 of the header, which is the page for the “base of high memory”, and store it (plus 1) in `NUM_IMAGE_PAGES`.

Then, we read `NUM_IMAGE_PAGES-1` consecutive sectors after the header into consecutive memory.

Suppose `Z_HEADER_ADDR` is `$2C00`. We have already read the header sector in. Now suppose the base of high memory in the header is `#$01F6`. Then `NUM_IMAGE_PAGES` would be `#$02`, and we would read one sector into memory at `$2D00`.

In the case of Zork I, `Z_HEADER_ADDR` is `$2C00`, and the base of high memory is `#$47FF`. `NUM_IMAGE_PAGES` is thus `#$48`. So, we would read 71 more sectors into memory, from `$2D00` to `$73FF`.

```

32  <main 28a>+≡ (211) <31b 33a>
    .no_error:
        LDY    #$05
        LDA    #$FF
        STA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        DEY
        LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        STA    NUM_IMAGE_PAGES
        INC    NUM_IMAGE_PAGES
        LDA    #$00

    .read_another_sector:
        CLC                                ; "START2"
        ADC    #$01
        TAX
        ADC    Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
        STA    SCRATCH2+1
        LDA    Z_HEADER_ADDR
        STA    SCRATCH2
        TXA
        CMP    NUM_IMAGE_PAGES
        BEQ    .check_bit_0_flag    ; done loading
        PHA
        STA    SCRATCH1
        LDA    #$00
        STA    SCRATCH1+1
        JSR    read_from_sector

        ; Historical note: The original Infocom source code did not check
        ; for an error here.

        BCC    .no_error2
        JMP    main

```

```

.no_error2:
    PLA
    JMP      .read_another_sector
Uses NUM_IMAGE_PAGES 208, SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH2 208, main 28a, and read_from_sector 110.

```

Next, we check the debug-on-start flag stored in bit 0 of byte 1 of the header, and if it isn't clear, we execute a BRK instruction. That drops the Apple II into its monitor, which allows debugging, however primitive by our modern standards.

This part was not in the original Infocom source code.

```

33a  <main 28a>+≡ (211) <32 33d>
      .check_bit_0_flag:
          LDY      #$01
          LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          AND      #$01
          EOR      #$01
          BEQ      .brk
Uses brk 33c.

33b  <die 33b>≡ (35b)
      .brk:
          JSR      brk
Uses brk 33c.

33c  <brk 33c>≡ (211)
      brk:
          BRK
Defines:
      brk, used in chunks 33, 35a, 37, 38, 161, 180b, 196, and 201.

```

Continuing after the load, we set the 24-bit Z\_PC program counter to its initial 16-bit value, which is stored in the header at bytes 6 and 7, bigendian. For Zork I, Z\_PC becomes #\$004859.

```

33d  <main 28a>+≡ (211) <33a 34>
      .store_initial_z_pc:
          LDY      #$07
          LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          STA      Z_PC
          DEY
          LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          STA      Z_PC+1
          LDA      #$00
          STA      Z_PC+2
Uses Z_PC 208.

```

Next, we load `GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR` and `Z_ABBREV_TABLE` from the header at bytes `#$0C-$0D` and `#$18-$19`, respectively. Again, these are bigendian values, so get byte-swapped. These are relative to the beginning of the image, so we simply add the page of the image address to them. There is no need to add the low byte of the header address, since the header already begins on a page boundary.

For Zork I, the header values are `#$20DE` and `#$00CA`, respectively. This means that `GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR` is `$4CDE` and `Z_ABBREV_TABLE` is `$2CCA`.

```

34  <main 28a>+≡ (211) <33d 35a>
    .store_z_global_vars_addr:
        LDY    #$0D
        LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        STA    GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR
        DEY
        LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        CLC
        ADC    Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
        STA    GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR+1

    .store_z_abbrev_table_addr:
        LDY    #$19
        LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        STA    Z_ABBREV_TABLE
        DEY
        LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        CLC
        ADC    Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
        STA    Z_ABBREV_TABLE+1

```

Uses `GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR 208` and `Z_ABBREV_TABLE 208`.

Next, we set `AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR` to the page-aligned memory address immediately after the image, and compare its page to the last viable RAM page. If it is greater, we hit a BRK instruction since there isn't enough memory to run the game.

For Zork I, `AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR` is \$7400.

For a fully-populated Apple II (64k RAM), the last viable RAM page is `#$BF`.

```

35a  <main 28a>+≡ (211) <34 35b>
      LDA    #$00
      STA    AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR
      LDA    NUM_IMAGE_PAGES
      CLC
      ADC    Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
      STA    AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR+1
      JSR    locate_last_ram_page
      SEC
      SBC    AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR+1
      BCC    .brk

```

Uses `AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR 208`, `NUM_IMAGE_PAGES 208`, and `brk 33c`.

We then store the difference as the last Z-image page in `LAST_Z_PAGE`, and the same, plus 1, in `FIRST_Z_PAGE`. We also set the next page table entry of the last page to `#$FF`.

For Zork I, `FIRST_Z_PAGE` is `#$4C`, and `LAST_Z_PAGE` is `#$4B`.

And lastly, we start the interpreter loop by executing the first instruction in z-code.

```

35b  <main 28a>+≡ (211) <35a
      TAY
      INY
      STY    FIRST_Z_PAGE
      TAY
      STY    LAST_Z_PAGE
      LDA    #$FF
      STA    (NEXT_PAGE_TABLE),Y
      JMP    do_instruction

```

<die 33b>

Uses `FIRST_Z_PAGE 208`, `LAST_Z_PAGE 208`, `NEXT_PAGE_TABLE 208`, and `do_instruction 115`.

To locate the last viable RAM page, we start with `$COFF` in `SCRATCH2`.

We then decrement the high byte of `SCRATCH2`, and read from the address twice. If it reads differently, we are not yet into viable RAM, so we decrement and try again.

Otherwise, we invert the byte, write it back, and read it back. Again, if it reads differently, we decrement and try again.

Finally, we return the high byte of `SCRATCH2`.

36 *⟨Locate last RAM page 36⟩*≡ (211)  
     *locate\_last\_ram\_page:*  
         SUBROUTINE

```

MOVb    #$C0, SCRATCH2+1
MOVb    #$FF, SCRATCH2
LDY     #$00

```

```

.loop:
DEC      SCRATCH2+1
LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
CMP      (SCRATCH2),Y
BNE      .loop
EOR      #$FF
STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
CMP      (SCRATCH2),Y
BNE      .loop
EOR      #$FF
STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
LDA      SCRATCH2+1
RTS

```

Defines:

*locate\_last\_ram\_addr*, never used.

Uses MOVb 11b and SCRATCH2 208.

## Chapter 5

# The Z-stack

The Z-stack is a stack of 16-bit values used by the Z-machine. It is not the same as the 6502 stack. The stack can hold values, but also holds call frames (see [Call](#)). The stack grows downwards in memory.

The stack pointer is `Z_SP`, and it points to the current top of the stack. The counter `STACK_COUNT` contains the current number of 16-bit elements on the stack.

As mentioned above, `STACK_COUNT`, is initialized to 1 and `Z_SP`, is initialized to `$03E8`.

Pushing a 16-bit value onto the stack involves placing the value at the next two free locations, low byte first, and then decrementing the stack pointer by 2. So for example, if pushing the value `#$1234` onto the stack, and `Z_SP` is `$03E8`, then `$03E7` will contain `#$34`, `$03E6` will contain `#$12`, and `Z_SP` will end up as `$03E6`. `STACK_COUNT` will also be incremented.

The `push` routine pushes the 16-byte value in `SCRATCH2` onto the stack. According to the code, if the number of elements becomes `#$B4` (180), the program will hit a `BRK` instruction.

```
37  <Push 37>≡ (211)
    push:
        SUBROUTINE

        SUBB    Z_SP, #$01
        LDY     #$00
        LDA     SCRATCH2
        STA     (Z_SP),Y
        SUBB    Z_SP, #$01
        LDA     SCRATCH2+1
```

```

    STA    (Z_SP),Y
    INC    STACK_COUNT
    LDA    STACK_COUNT
    CMP    #$B4
    BCC    .end
    JSR    brk

```

```

.end:
    RTS

```

Defines:

push, used in chunks 126, 127, 129–31, and 172b.

Uses SCRATCH2 208, STACK\_COUNT 208, SUBB 16b, Z\_SP 208, and brk 33c.

The pop routine pops a 16-bit value from the stack into SCRATCH2, which increments Z\_SP by 2, then decrements STACK\_COUNT. If STACK\_COUNT ends up as zero, the stack underflows and the program will hit a BRK instruction.

38     $\langle \text{Pop 38} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

    pop:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDY    #$00
        LDA    (Z_SP),Y
        STA    SCRATCH2+1
        INCW    Z_SP
        LDA    (Z_SP),Y
        STA    SCRATCH2
        INCW    Z_SP
        DEC    STACK_COUNT
        BNE    .end
        JSR    brk
    .end:
        RTS

```

Defines:

pop, used in chunks 124, 127, 133, 171b, 172a, and 186a.

Uses INCW 13b, SCRATCH2 208, STACK\_COUNT 208, Z\_SP 208, and brk 33c.



## Chapter 6

# Z-code

Z-code is not stored in memory in a linear fashion. Rather, it is stored in pages of 256 bytes, in the order that the Z-machine loads them. `ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR` is the address in memory that the current page of Z-code is stored in.

The `Z_PC` 24-bit address is an address into z-code. So, getting the next code byte translates to retrieving the byte at  $(\text{ZCODE\_PAGE\_ADDR}) + \text{Z\_PC}$  and incrementing the low byte of `Z_PC`.

Of course, if the low byte of `Z_PC` ends up as 0, we'll need to propagate the increment to its other bytes, but also invalidate the current code page.

This is handled through the `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID` flag. If it is zero, then we will need to load a page of Z-code into `ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR`.

As an example, when the Z-machine starts, `Z_PC` is `#$004859`, and `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID` is 0. This means that we will have to load code page `#$48`.

```
39  <Get next code byte 39>≡ (211) 40>
    get_next_code_byte:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
        BEQ    .zcode_page_invalid
        LDY    Z_PC                ; load from memory
        LDA    (ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR),Y
        INY
        STY    Z_PC
        BEQ    .invalidate_zcode_page ; next byte in next page?
        RTS

    .invalidate_zcode_page:
```

```

LDY    #$00
STY    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
INC     Z_PC+1
BNE     .end
INC     Z_PC+2

```

```

.end:
RTS

```

Defines:

get\_next\_code\_byte, used in chunks 41, 115, 116a, 123, 124, 126, 129c, 130, 164, and 165.  
 Uses ZCODE\_PAGE\_ADDR 208, ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID 208, and Z\_PC 208.

As an example, on start, Z\_PC is #\$004859, so we have to access code page #\$0048. Since the high byte isn't set, we know that the code page is in memory. If the high byte were set, we would have to locate that page in memory, and if it isn't there, we would have to load it from disk.

But let's suppose that Z\_PC were #\$014859. We would have to access code page #\$0148. Initially, PAGE\_L.TABLE and PAGE\_H.TABLE are zeroed out, so find\_index\_of\_page\_table would return with carry set and the A register set to LAST\_Z\_PAGE (\$4B).

```

40  <Get next code byte 39>+≡ (211) <39 41>
      .zcode_page_invalid:
          LDA     Z_PC+2
          BNE     .find_pc_page_in_page_table
          LDA     Z_PC+1
          CMP     NUM_IMAGE_PAGES
          BCC     .set_page_addr

      .find_pc_page_in_page_table:
          LDA     Z_PC+1
          STA     SCRATCH2
          LDA     Z_PC+2
          STA     SCRATCH2+1
          JSR     find_index_of_page_table
          STA     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX
          BCS     .not_found_in_page_table

      .set_page_first:
          JSR     set_page_first
          CLC
          LDA     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX
          ADC     NUM_IMAGE_PAGES

```

Defines:

.zcode\_page\_invalid, never used.  
 Uses NUM\_IMAGE\_PAGES 208, PAGE\_TABLE\_INDEX 208, SCRATCH2 208, Z\_PC 208,  
 find\_index\_of\_page\_table 43, and set\_page\_first 44.

Once we've ensured that the desired Z-code page is in memory, we can add the page to the page of `Z_HEADER_ADDR` and store in `ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR`. We also set the low byte of `ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR` to zero since we're guaranteed to be at the top of the page. We also set `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID` to true. And finally we go back to the beginning of the routine to get the next code byte.

```

41  <Get next code byte 39>+≡ (211) <40 42>
    .set_page_addr:
        CLC
        ADC     Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR+1
        LDA     #$00
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR
        LDA     #$FF
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
        JMP     get_next_code_byte

```

Defines:

`.set_page_addr`, never used.

Uses `ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR 208`, `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID 208`, and `get_next_code_byte 39`.

If the page we need isn't found in the page table, we need to load it from disk, and it gets loaded into AFTER\_Z\_IMAGE\_ADDR plus PAGE\_TABLE\_INDEX pages. On a good read, we store the z-page value into the page table.

```

42  <Get next code byte 39>+≡ (211) <41
    .not_found_in_page_table:
        CMP     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2
        BNE     .read_from_disk
        LDA     #$00
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2

    .read_from_disk:
        LDA     AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR
        STA     SCRATCH2
        LDA     AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR+1
        STA     SCRATCH2+1
        LDA     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX
        CLC
        ADC     SCRATCH2+1
        STA     SCRATCH2+1
        LDA     Z_PC+1
        STA     SCRATCH1
        LDA     Z_PC+2
        STA     SCRATCH1+1
        JSR     read_from_sector
        BCC     .good_read
        JMP     main

    .good_read:
        LDY     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX
        LDA     Z_PC+1
        STA     (PAGE_L_TABLE),Y
        LDA     Z_PC+2
        STA     (PAGE_H_TABLE),Y
        TYA
        JMP     .set_page_first

```

Defines:

.not\_found\_in\_page\_table, never used.

Uses AFTER\_Z\_IMAGE\_ADDR 208, PAGE\_H\_TABLE 208, PAGE\_L\_TABLE 208, PAGE\_TABLE\_INDEX 208, PAGE\_TABLE\_INDEX2 208, SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH2 208, ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID2 208, Z\_PC 208, good\_read 227, main 28a, read\_from\_sector 110, and set\_page\_first 44.

Given a page-aligned address in SCRATCH2, this routine searches through the PAGE\_L\_TABLE and PAGE\_H\_TABLE for that address, returning the index found in A (or LAST\_Z\_PAGE if not found). The carry flag is clear if the page was found, otherwise it is set.

43  $\langle$ Find index of page table 43 $\rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

find_index_of_page_table:
    SUBROUTINE

        LDX    FIRST_Z_PAGE
        LDY    #$00
        LDA    SCRATCH2

    .loop:
        CMP    (PAGE_L_TABLE),Y
        BNE    .next
        LDA    SCRATCH2+1
        CMP    (PAGE_H_TABLE),Y
        BEQ    .found
        LDA    SCRATCH2

    .next:
        INY
        DEX
        BNE    .loop
        LDA    LAST_Z_PAGE
        SEC
        RTS

    .found:
        TYA
        CLC
        RTS

```

Defines:

find\_index\_of\_page\_table, used in chunks 40 and 45.

Uses FIRST\_Z\_PAGE 208, LAST\_Z\_PAGE 208, PAGE\_H\_TABLE 208, PAGE\_L\_TABLE 208, and SCRATCH2 208.

Setting page A first is a matter of fiddling with all the pointers in the right order. Of course, if it's already the `FIRST_Z_PAGE`, we're done.

```

44  <Set page first 44>≡ (211)
    set_page_first:
        SUBROUTINE

            CMP     FIRST_Z_PAGE
            BEQ     .end
            LDX     FIRST_Z_PAGE          ; prev_first = FIRST_Z_PAGE
            STA     FIRST_Z_PAGE          ; FIRST_Z_PAGE = A

            TAY
            LDA     (NEXT_PAGE_TABLE),Y   ; SCRATCH2L = NEXT_PAGE_TABLE[FIRST_Z_PAGE]
            STA     SCRATCH2
            TXA
            STA     (NEXT_PAGE_TABLE),Y   ; NEXT_PAGE_TABLE[FIRST_Z_PAGE] = prev_first

            LDA     (PREV_PAGE_TABLE),Y   ; SCRATCH2H = PREV_PAGE_TABLE[FIRST_Z_PAGE]
            STA     SCRATCH2+1
            LDA     #$FF
            STA     (PREV_PAGE_TABLE),Y   ; PREV_PAGE_TABLE[FIRST_Z_PAGE] = #$FF
            LDY     SCRATCH2+1
            LDA     SCRATCH2
            STA     (NEXT_PAGE_TABLE),Y   ; NEXT_PAGE_TABLE[SCRATCH2H] = SCRATCH2L
            TXA
            TAY
            LDA     FIRST_Z_PAGE
            STA     (PREV_PAGE_TABLE),Y   ; PREV_PAGE_TABLE[prev_first] = FIRST_Z_PAGE
            LDA     SCRATCH2
            CMP     #$FF
            BEQ     .set_last_z_page
            TAY
            LDA     SCRATCH2+1
            STA     (PREV_PAGE_TABLE),Y   ; PREV_PAGE_TABLE[SCRATCH2L] = SCRATCH2H

        .end:
            RTS

        .set_last_z_page:
            LDA     SCRATCH2+1          ; LAST_Z_PAGE = SCRATCH2H
            STA     LAST_Z_PAGE
            RTS

```

Defines:

`set_page_first`, used in chunks 40, 42, and 45.

Uses `FIRST_Z_PAGE` 208, `LAST_Z_PAGE` 208, `NEXT_PAGE_TABLE` 208, `PREV_PAGE_TABLE` 208, and `SCRATCH2` 208.

The `get_next_code_byte2` routine is identical to `get_next_code_byte`, except that it uses a second set of Z\_PC variables: `Z_PC2`, `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2`, `ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2`, and `PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2`.

Note that the three bytes of `Z_PC2` are not stored in memory in the same order as `Z_PC`, which is why we separate out the bytes into `Z_PC2_HH`, `Z_PC2_H`, and `Z_PC2_L`.

```

45  <Get next code byte 2 45>≡ (211)
    get_next_code_byte2:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA      ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
        BEQ      .zcode_page_invalid
        LDY      Z_PC2_L
        LDA      (ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2),Y
        INY
        STY      Z_PC2_L
        BEQ      .invalidate_zcode_page
        RTS

    .invalidate_zcode_page:
        LDY      #$00
        STY      ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
        INC      Z_PC2_H
        BNE      .end
        INC      Z_PC2_HH

    .end:
        RTS

    .zcode_page_invalid:
        LDA      Z_PC2_HH
        BNE      .find_pc_page_in_page_table
        LDA      Z_PC2_H
        CMP      NUM_IMAGE_PAGES
        BCC      .set_page_addr

    .find_pc_page_in_page_table:
        LDA      Z_PC2_H
        STA      SCRATCH2
        LDA      Z_PC2_HH
        STA      SCRATCH2+1
        JSR      find_index_of_page_table
        STA      PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2
        BCS      .not_found_in_page_table

    .set_page_first:
        JSR      set_page_first
        CLC

```

```

        LDA     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2
        ADC     NUM_IMAGE_PAGES

.set_page_addr:
        CLC
        ADC     Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2+1
        LDA     #$00
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2
        LDA     #$FF
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
        JMP     get_next_code_byte2

.not_found_in_page_table:
        CMP     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX
        BNE     .read_from_disk
        LDA     #$00
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_VALID

.read_from_disk:
        LDA     AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR
        STA     SCRATCH2
        LDA     AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR+1
        STA     SCRATCH2+1
        LDA     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2
        CLC
        ADC     SCRATCH2+1
        STA     SCRATCH2+1
        LDA     Z_PC2_H
        STA     SCRATCH1
        LDA     Z_PC2_HH
        STA     SCRATCH1+1
        JSR     read_from_sector
        BCC     .good_read
        JMP     main

.good_read:
        LDY     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2
        LDA     Z_PC2_H
        STA     (PAGE_L_TABLE),Y
        LDA     Z_PC2_HH
        STA     (PAGE_H_TABLE),Y
        TYA
        JMP     .set_page_first

```

Defines:

get\_next\_code\_byte2, used in chunks 47a and 169a.

Uses AFTER\_Z\_IMAGE\_ADDR 208, NUM\_IMAGE\_PAGES 208, PAGE\_H\_TABLE 208, PAGE\_L\_TABLE 208, PAGE\_TABLE\_INDEX 208, PAGE\_TABLE\_INDEX2 208, SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH2 208, ZCODE\_PAGE\_ADDR2 208, ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID 208, ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID2 208, Z\_PC2\_H 208, Z\_PC2\_HH 208, Z\_PC2\_L 208, find\_index\_of\_page\_table 43, good\_read 227, main 28a,



`read_from_sector` 110, and `set_page_first` 44.

That routine is used in `get_next_code_word`, which simply gets a 16-bit bigendian value at `Z_PC2` and stores it in `SCRATCH2`.

47a  $\langle \textit{Get next code word 47a} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

`get_next_code_word:`  
SUBROUTINE

```
JSR    get_next_code_byte2
PHA
JSR    get_next_code_byte2
STA    SCRATCH2
PLA
STA    SCRATCH2+1
RTS
```

Defines:

`get_next_code_word`, used in chunks 63 and 168b.

Uses `SCRATCH2` 208 and `get_next_code_byte2` 45.

The `load_address` routine copies `SCRATCH2` to `Z_PC2`.

47b  $\langle \textit{Load address 47b} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

`load_address:`  
SUBROUTINE

```
LDA    SCRATCH2
STA    Z_PC2_L
LDA    SCRATCH2+1
STA    Z_PC2_H
LDA    #$00
STA    Z_PC2_HH
```

Defines:

`load_address`, used in chunks 140, 168b, 169a, and 188b.

Uses `SCRATCH2` 208, `Z_PC2_H` 208, `Z_PC2_HH` 208, and `Z_PC2_L` 208.

The `load_packed_address` routine multiplies `SCRATCH2` by 2 and stores the result in `Z_PC2`.

```

48  <Load packed address 48>≡ (211)
    invalidate_zcode_page2:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA    #$00
        STA    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
        RTS

    load_packed_address:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA    SCRATCH2
        ASL
        STA    Z_PC2_L
        LDA    SCRATCH2+1
        ROL
        STA    Z_PC2_H
        LDA    #$00
        ROL
        STA    Z_PC2_HH
        JMP    invalidate_zcode_page2

```

Defines:

`invalidate_zcode_page2`, never used.

`load_packed_address`, used in chunks 67 and 189c.

Uses `SCRATCH2` 208, `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2` 208, `Z_PC2_H` 208, `Z_PC2_HH` 208, and `Z_PC2_L` 208.

# Chapter 7

## I/O

### 7.1 Strings and output

#### 7.1.1 The Apple II text screen

The `cout_string` routine stores a pointer to the ASCII string to print in `SCRATCH2`, and the number of characters to print in the `X` register. It uses the `COUT1` routine to output characters to the screen.

Apple II Monitors Peeled describes `COUT1` as writing the byte in the `A` register to the screen at cursor position `CV`, `CH`, using `INVFLG` and supporting cursor movement.

The difference between `COUT` and `COUT1` is that `COUT1` always prints to the screen, while `COUT` prints to whatever device is currently set as the output (e.g. a modem).

See also [Apple II Reference Manual](#) (Apple, 1979) page 61 for an explanation of these routines.

The logical-or with `#$80` sets the high bit, which causes `COUT1` to output normal characters. Without it, the characters would be in inverse text.

```
49  <Output string to console 49>≡ (211)
    cout_string:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDY    #$00

    .loop:
```

```

LDA    (SCRATCH2),Y
ORA    #$80
JSR    COUT1
INY
DEX
BNE    .loop
RTS

```

Defines:

    cout\_string, used in chunks 56, 71, and 148.  
 Uses COUT1 207 and SCRATCH2 208.

The home routine calls the ROM HOME routine, which clears the scroll window and sets the cursor to the top left corner of the window. This routine, however, also loads CURR\_LINE with the top line of the window.

```

50  <Home 50>≡ (211)
    home:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR    HOME
        LDA    WNDTOP
        STA    CURR_LINE
        RTS

```

Defines:

    home, used in chunks 51 and 146.  
 Uses CURR\_LINE 208, HOME 207, and WNDTOP 207.

The `reset_window` routine sets the top left and bottom right of the screen scroll window to their full-screen values, sets the input prompt character to `>`, resets the inverse flag to `#$FF` (do not invert), then calls `home` to reset the cursor.

```

51  <Reset window 51>≡ (211)
    reset_window:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA    #1
        STA    WNDTOP
        LDA    #0
        STA    WNDLFT
        LDA    #40
        STA    WNDWDTH
        LDA    #24
        STA    WNDBTM
        LDA    #$3E    ; '>'
        STA    PROMPT
        LDA    #$FF
        STA    INVFLG
        JSR    home
        RTS

```

Defines:

`reset_window`, used in chunk 31a.

Uses `INVFLG` 207, `PROMPT` 207, `WNDBTM` 207, `WNDLFT` 207, `WNDTOP` 207, `WNDWDTH` 207, and `home` 50.

### 7.1.2 The text buffer

When printing to the screen, Zork breaks lines between words. To do this, we buffer characters into the `BUFF_AREA`, which starts at address `$0200`. The offset into the area to put the next character into is in `BUFF_END`.

The `dump_buffer_to_screen` routine dumps the current buffer line to the screen, and then zeros `BUFF_END`.

```

52  <Dump buffer to screen 52>≡ (211)
    dump_buffer_to_screen:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDX    #$00

    .loop:
        CPX    BUFF_END
        BEQ    .done
        LDA    BUFF_AREA,X
        JSR    COUT1
        INX
        JMP    .loop

    .done:
        LDX    #$00
        STX    BUFF_END
        RTS

```

Defines:

`dump_buffer_to_screen`, used in chunks 55 and 71.

Uses `BUFF_AREA` 208, `BUFF_END` 208, and `COUT1` 207.

Zork also has the option to send all output to the printer, and the `dump_buffer_to_printer` routine is the printer version of `dump_buffer_to_screen`.

Output to the printer involves temporarily changing `CSW` (initially `COUT1`) to the printer output routine at `PRINTER_CSW`, calling `COUT` with the characters to print, then restoring `CSW`. Note that we call `COUT`, not `COUT1`.

See [Apple II Reference Manual](#) (Apple, 1979) page 61 for an explanation of these routines.

If the printer hasn't yet been initialized, we send the command string `ctrl-I80N`, which according to the Apple II Parallel Printer Interface Card Installation and Operation Manual, sets the printer to output 80 characters per line.

There is one part of initialization which isn't clear. It stores `#$91`, corresponding to character `Q`, into a screen memory hole at `$0779`. The purpose of doing this is not known.

See [Understanding the Apple //e](#) (Sather, 1985) figure 5.5 for details on screen holes.

See [Apple II Reference Manual](#) (Apple, 1979) page 82 for a possible explanation, where `$0779` is part of `SCRATCHpad` RAM for slot 1, which is typically where the printer card would be placed. Maybe writing `#$91` to `$0779` was necessary to enable command mode for certain cards.

```

53  <Dump buffer to printer 53>≡ (211)
    printer_card_initialized_flag:
        BYTE    00

    dump_buffer_to_printer:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA     CSW
        PHA
        LDA     CSW+1
        PHA
        LDA     PRINTER_CSW
        STA     CSW
        LDA     PRINTER_CSW+1
        STA     CSW+1
        LDX     #$00
        LDA     printer_card_initialized_flag
        BNE     .loop
        INC     printer_card_initialized_flag

    .printer_set_80_column_output:
        LDA     #$09      ; ctrl-I
        JSR     COUT
        LDA     #$91      ; 'Q'
```

```
    STA    $0779    ; Scratchpad RAM for slot 1.
    LDA    #$B8     ; '8'
    JSR    COUT
    LDA    #$B0     ; '0'
    JSR    COUT
    LDA    #$CE     ; 'N'
    JSR    COUT

.loop:
    CPX    BUFF_END
    BEQ    .done
    LDA    BUFF_AREA,X
    JSR    COUT
    INX
    JMP    .loop

.done:
    LDA    CSW
    STA    PRINTER_CSW
    LDA    CSW+1
    STA    PRINTER_CSW+1
    PLA
    STA    CSW+1
    PLA
    STA    CSW
    RTS
```

Defines:

    dump\_buffer\_to\_printer, used in chunks 55 and 73.

    printer\_card\_initialized\_flag, never used.

Uses BUFF\_AREA 208, BUFF\_END 208, COUT 207, CSW 207, and PRINTER\_CSW 208.



Tying these two routines together is `dump_buffer_line`, which dumps the current buffer line to the screen, and optionally the printer, depending on the printer output flag stored in bit 0 of offset `#$11` in the Z-machine header. Presumably this bit is set (in the Z-code itself) when you type `SCRIPT` on the Zork command line, and unset when you type `UNSCRIPT`.

```

55  <Dump buffer line 55>≡ (211)
    dump_buffer_line:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDY    #$11
        LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        AND    #$01
        BEQ    .skip_printer
        JSR    dump_buffer_to_printer

        .skip_printer:
        JSR    dump_buffer_to_screen
        RTS

```

Defines:

`dump_buffer_line`, used in chunks [57a](#), [71](#), [73](#), [148](#), [150a](#), and [151](#).  
 Uses `dump_buffer_to_printer` [53](#) and `dump_buffer_to_screen` [52](#).

The `dump_buffer_with_more` routine dumps the buffered line, but first, we check if we've reached the bottom of the screen by comparing `CURR_LINE >= WNDBTM`. If true, we print `[MORE]` in inverse text, wait for the user to hit a character, set `CURR_LINE` to `WNDTOP + 1`, and continue.

```

56  <Dump buffer with more 56>≡ (211) 57a>
    string_more:
        DC      "[MORE]"

dump_buffer_with_more:
    SUBROUTINE

        INC     CURR_LINE
        LDA     CURR_LINE
        CMP     WNDBTM
        BCC     .good_to_go      ; haven't reached bottom of screen yet

        STOW    string_more, SCRATCH2
        LDX     #6

        LDA     #$3F
        STA     INVFLG
        JSR     cout_string      ; print [MORE] in inverse text

        LDA     #$FF
        STA     INVFLG

        JSR     RDKEY            ; wait for keypress
        LDA     CH
        SEC
        SBC     #$06
        STA     CH                ; move cursor back 6
        JSR     CLREOL           ; and clear the line
        LDA     WNDTOP
        STA     CURR_LINE
        INC     CURR_LINE        ; start at top of screen

    .good_to_go:

```

Defines:

`dump_buffer_with_more`, used in chunks 59, 60b, 146, 148, 150, 151, 203b, and 204.  
 Uses CH 207, CLREOL 207, CURR\_LINE 208, INVFLG 207, RDKEY 207, SCRATCH2 208, STOW 10,  
 WNDBTM 207, WNDTOP 207, and cout\_string 49.

Next, we call `dump_buffer_line` to output the buffer to the screen. If we haven't yet reached the end of the line, then output a newline character to the screen.

```
57a  <Dump buffer with more 56>+≡ (211) <56 57b>
      LDA      BUFF_END
      PHA
      JSR      dump_buffer_line
      PLA
      CMP      WNDWIDTH
      BEQ      .skip_newline
      LDA      #$8D
      JSR      COUT1
```

`.skip_newline:`

Uses `BUFF_END` 208, `COUT1` 207, `WNDWIDTH` 207, and `dump_buffer_line` 55.

Next, we check if we are also outputting to the printer. If so, we output a newline to the printer as well. Note that we've already output the line to the printer in `dump_buffer_line`, so we only need to output a newline here.

```
57b  <Dump buffer with more 56>+≡ (211) <57a 58>
      LDY      #$11
      LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
      AND      #$01
      BEQ      .reset_buffer_end

      LDA      CSW
      PHA
      LDA      CSW+1
      PHA
      LDA      PRINTER_CSW
      STA      CSW
      LDA      PRINTER_CSW+1
      STA      CSW+1

      LDA      #$8D
      JSR      COUT

      LDA      CSW
      STA      PRINTER_CSW
      LDA      CSW+1
      STA      PRINTER_CSW+1
      PLA
      STA      CSW+1
      PLA
      STA      CSW
```

`.reset_buffer_end:`

Uses `COUT` 207, `CSW` 207, and `PRINTER_CSW` 208.

The last step is to set `BUFF_END` to zero.

```
58  <Dump buffer with more 56>+≡ (211) <57b
      LDX      #$00
      JMP      buffer_char_set_buffer_end
Uses buffer_char_set.buffer_end 59.
```

The high-level routine `buffer_char` places the ASCII character in the A register into the end of the buffer.

If the character was a newline, then we tail-call to `dump_buffer_with_more` to dump the buffer to the output and return. Calling `dump_buffer_with_more` also resets `BUFF_END` to zero.

Otherwise, the character is first converted to uppercase if it is lowercase, then stored in the buffer and, if we haven't yet hit the end of the row, we increment `BUFF_END` and then return.

Control characters (those under `#$20`) are not put in the buffer, and simply ignored.

```
59  <Buffer a character 59>≡ (211) 60a>
    buffer_char:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDX    BUFF_END
        CMP    #$0D
        BNE    .not_OD
        JMP    dump_buffer_with_more

    .not_OD:
        CMP    #$20
        BCC    buffer_char_set_buffer_end
        CMP    #$60
        BCC    .store_char
        CMP    #$80
        BCS    .store_char
        SEC
        SBC    #$20                ; converts to uppercase

    .store_char:
        ORA    #$80                ; sets as normal text
        STA    BUFF_AREA,X
        CPX    WNDWIDTH
        BCS    .hit_right_limit
        INX

    buffer_char_set_buffer_end:
        STX    BUFF_END
        RTS

    .hit_right_limit:
```

Defines:

`buffer_char`, used in chunks 61b, 68a, 69c, 71, 106, 107, 147a, 149, 185b, 187b, and 188c.

`buffer_char_set_buffer_end`, used in chunk 58.

Uses `BUFF_AREA` 208, `BUFF_END` 208, `WNDWIDTH` 207, and `dump_buffer_with_more` 56.

If we have hit the end of a row, we're going to put the word we just wrote onto the next line.

To do that, we search for the position of the last space in the buffer, or if there wasn't any space, we just use the position of the end of the row.

```
60a  <Buffer a character 59>+≡ (211) <59 60b>
      LDA      #$A0 ; normal space
```

```
      .loop:
      CMP      BUFF_AREA,X
      BEQ      .endloop
      DEX
      BNE      .loop
      LDX      WNDWDTH
```

```
      .endloop:
```

Uses BUFF\_AREA 208 and WNDWDTH 207.

Now that we've found the position to break the line at, we dump the buffer up until that position using `dump_buffer_with_more`, which also resets `BUFF_END` to zero.

```
60b  <Buffer a character 59>+≡ (211) <60a 61a>
      STX      BUFF_LINE_LEN
      STX      BUFF_END
      JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
```

Uses BUFF\_END 208, BUFF\_LINE\_LEN 208, and dump\_buffer\_with\_more 56.

Next, we increment `BUFF_LINE_LEN` to skip past the space. If we're past the window width though, we take the last character we added, move it to the end of the buffer (which should be the beginning of the buffer), increment `BUFF_END`, then we increment `BUFF_LINE_LEN`.

```
61a  <Buffer a character 59>+≡ (211) <60b
      .increment_length:
          INC      BUFF_LINE_LEN
          LDX      BUFF_LINE_LEN
          CPX      WNDWDTH
          BCC      .move_last_char
          BEQ      .move_last_char
          RTS

      .move_last_char:
          LDA      BUFF_AREA,X
          LDX      BUFF_END
          STA      BUFF_AREA,X
          INC      BUFF_END
          LDX      BUFF_LINE_LEN
          JMP      .increment_length
```

Uses `BUFF_AREA` 208, `BUFF_END` 208, `BUFF_LINE_LEN` 208, and `WNDWDTH` 207.

We can print an ASCII string with the `print_ascii_string` routine. It takes the length of the string in the X register, and the address of the string in `SCRATCH2`. It calls `buffer_char` to buffer each character in the string.

```
61b  <Print ASCII string 61b>≡ (211)
      print_ascii_string:
          SUBROUTINE

          STX      SCRATCH3
          LDY      #$00
          STY      SCRATCH3+1

      .loop:
          LDY      SCRATCH3+1
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          JSR      buffer_char
          INC      SCRATCH3+1
          DEC      SCRATCH3
          BNE      .loop
          RTS
```

Defines:

`print_ascii_string`, used in chunks 146, 148, 150a, 151, and 204.

Uses `SCRATCH2` 208, `SCRATCH3` 208, and `buffer_char` 59.

### 7.1.3 Z-coded strings

For how strings and characters are encoded, see [section 3 of the Z-machine standard](#).

The alphabet shifts are stored in `SHIFT_ALPHABET` for a one-character shift, and `SHIFT_LOCK_ALPHABET` for a locked shift. The routine `get_alphabet` gets the alphabet to use, accounting for shifts.

```
62  <Get alphabet 62>≡ (211)
    get_alphabet:
        LDA     SHIFT_ALPHABET
        BPL     .remove_shift
        LDA     LOCKED_ALPHABET
        RTS

    .remove_shift:
        LDY     #$FF
        STY     SHIFT_ALPHABET
        RTS
```

Defines:

`get_alphabet`, used in chunks 65a and 66.

Uses `LOCKED_ALPHABET 208` and `SHIFT_ALPHABET 208`.



Since z-characters are encoded three at a time in two consecutive bytes in z-code, there's a state machine which determines where we are in the decompression. The state is stored in `ZDECOMPRESS_STATE`.

If `ZDECOMPRESS_STATE` is 0, then we need to load the next two bytes from z-code and extract the first character. If `ZDECOMPRESS_STATE` is 1, then we need to extract the second character. If `ZDECOMPRESS_STATE` is 2, then we need to extract the third character. And finally if `ZDECOMPRESS_STATE` is -1, then we've reached the end of the string.

The z-character is returned in the A register. Furthermore, the carry is set when requesting the next character, but we've already reached the end of the string. Otherwise the carry is cleared.

```

63  <Get next zchar 63>≡ (211)
    get_next_zchar:
        LDA    ZDECOMPRESS_STATE
        BPL    .check_for_char_1
        SEC
        RTS

    .check_for_char_1:
        BNE    .check_for_char_2
        INC    ZDECOMPRESS_STATE
        JSR    get_next_code_word
        LDA    SCRATCH2
        STA    ZCHARS_L
        LDA    SCRATCH2+1
        STA    ZCHARS_H
        LDA    ZCHARS_H
        LSR
        LSR
        AND    #$1F
        CLC
        RTS

    .check_for_char_2:
        SEC
        SBC    #$01
        BNE    .check_for_last
        LDA    #$02
        STA    ZDECOMPRESS_STATE
        LDA    ZCHARS_H
        LSR
        LDA    ZCHARS_L
        ROR
        TAY
        LDA    ZCHARS_H
        LSR
        LSR

```

```

        TYA
        ROR
        LSR
        LSR
        LSR
        AND        #$1F
        CLC
        RTS

.check_for_last:
        LDA        #$00
        STA        ZDECOMPRESS_STATE
        LDA        ZCHARS_H
        BPL        .get_char_3
        LDA        #$FF
        STA        ZDECOMPRESS_STATE

.get_char_3:
        LDA        ZCHARS_L
        AND        #$1F
        CLC
        RTS

```

Defines:

`get_next_zchar`, used in chunks 65a, 67, and 70a.  
 Uses `SCRATCH2` 208, `ZCHARS_H` 208, `ZCHARS_L` 208, `ZDECOMPRESS_STATE` 208,  
 and `get_next_code_word` 47a.

The `print_zstring` routine prints the z-encoded string at `Z_PC2` to the screen. It uses `get_next_zchar` to get the next z-character, and handles alphabet shifts.

We first initialize the shift state.

```

64  <Print zstring 64>≡ (211) 65a>
    print_zstring:
    SUBROUTINE

        LDA        #$00
        STA        LOCKED_ALPHABET
        STA        ZDECOMPRESS_STATE
        STOB        #$FF, SHIFT_ALPHABET

```

Defines:

`print_zstring`, used in chunks 67, 70b, 140, and 162b.  
 Uses `LOCKED_ALPHABET` 208, `SHIFT_ALPHABET` 208, `STOB` 11b, and `ZDECOMPRESS_STATE` 208.

Next, we loop through the z-string, getting each z-character. We have to handle special z-characters separately.

z-character 0 is always a space.

z-character 1 means to look at the next z-character and use it as an index into the abbreviation table, printing that string.

z-characters 2 and 3 shifts the alphabet forwards (A0 to A1 to A2 to A0) and backwards (A0 to A2 to A1 to A0) respectively.

z-characters 4 and 5 shift-locks the alphabet.

All other characters will get translated to the ASCII character using the current alphabet.

```

65a  <Print zstring 64>+≡ (211) <64
      .loop:
          JSR      get_next_zchar
          BCC      .not_end
          RTS

      .not_end:
          STA      SCRATCH3
          BEQ      .space          ; z-char 0?
          CMP      #$01
          BEQ      .abbreviation   ; z-char 1?
          CMP      #$04
          BCC      .shift_alphabet  ; z-char 2 or 3?
          CMP      #$06
          BCC      .shift_lock_alphabet ; z-char 4 or 5?
          JSR      get_alphabet

          ; fall through to print the z-character
      <Print the zchar 68a>
      Uses SCRATCH3 208, get_alphabet 62, and get_next_zchar 63.

```

```

65b  <Printing a space 65b>≡ (211)
      .space:
          LDA      #$20
          JMP      .printchar
      Defines:
          .space, never used.

```

66     $\langle$ *Shifting alphabets* 66 $\rangle \equiv$  (211)

```
.shift_alphabet:
    JSR     get_alphabet
    CLC
    ADC     #$02
    ADC     SCRATCH3
    JSR     A_mod_3
    STA     SHIFT_ALPHABET
    JMP     .loop

.shift_lock_alphabet:
    JSR     get_alphabet
    CLC
    ADC     SCRATCH3
    JSR     A_mod_3
    STA     LOCKED_ALPHABET
    JMP     .loop
```

Defines:

.shift\_alphabet, never used.

.shift\_lock\_alphabet, never used.

Uses A\_mod\_3 105, LOCKED\_ALPHABET 208, SCRATCH3 208, SHIFT\_ALPHABET 208,  
and get\_alphabet 62.

When printing an abbreviation, we multiply the z-character by 2 to get an address index into `Z_ABBREV_TABLE`. The address from the table is then stored in `SCRATCH2`, and we recurse into `print_zstring` to print the abbreviation. This involves saving and restoring the current decompress state.

```

67  <Printing an abbreviation 67>≡ (211)
    .abbreviation:
        JSR      get_next_zchar
        ASL
        ADC      #$01
        TAY
        LDA      (Z_ABBREV_TABLE),Y
        STA      SCRATCH2
        DEY
        LDA      (Z_ABBREV_TABLE),Y
        STA      SCRATCH2+1

        ; Save the decompress state

        LDA      LOCKED_ALPHABET
        PHA
        LDA      ZDECOMPRESS_STATE
        PHA
        LDA      ZCHARS_L
        PHA
        LDA      ZCHARS_H
        PHA
        LDA      Z_PC2_L
        PHA
        LDA      Z_PC2_H
        PHA
        LDA      Z_PC2_HH
        PHA

        JSR      load_packed_address
        JSR      print_zstring

        ; Restore the decompress state

        PLA
        STA      Z_PC2_HH
        PLA
        STA      Z_PC2_H
        PLA
        STA      Z_PC2_L
        LDA      #$00
        STA      ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
        PLA
        STA      ZCHARS_H
        PLA

```

```

    STA    ZCHARS_L
    PLA
    STA    ZDECOMPRESS_STATE
    PLA
    STA    LOCKED_ALPHABET
    LDA    #$FF                ; Resets any temporary shift
    STA    SHIFT_ALPHABET
    JMP    .loop

```

Defines:

.abbreviation, never used.

Uses LOCKED\_ALPHABET 208, SCRATCH2 208, SHIFT\_ALPHABET 208, ZCHARS\_H 208, ZCHARS\_L 208, ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID2 208, ZDECOMPRESS\_STATE 208, Z\_ABBREV\_TABLE 208, Z\_PC2\_H 208, Z\_PC2\_HH 208, Z\_PC2\_L 208, get\_next\_zchar 63, load\_packed\_address 48, and print\_zstring 64.

If we are on alphabet 0, then we print the ASCII character directly by adding #\$5B. Remember that we are handling 26 z-characters 6-31, so the ASCII characters will be a-z.

68a    *<Print the zchar 68a>*≡ (65a) 68b>

```

    ORA    #$00
    BNE    .check_for_alphabet_A1
    LDA    #$5B

```

.add\_ascii\_offset:

```

    CLC
    ADC    SCRATCH3

```

.printchar:

```

    JSR    buffer_char
    JMP    .loop

```

Uses SCRATCH3 208 and buffer\_char 59.

Alphabet 1 handles uppercase characters A-Z, so we add #\$3B to the z-char.

68b    *<Print the zchar 68a>*+≡ (65a) <68a 69b>

```

    .check_for_alphabet_A1:
    CMP    #$01
    BNE    .map_ascii_for_A2
    LDA    #$3B
    JMP    .add_ascii_offset

```

Defines:

.check\_for\_alphabet\_A1, never used.

Alphabet 2 is more complicated because it doesn't map consecutively onto ASCII characters.

z-character 6 in alphabet 2 means that the two subsequent z-characters specify a ten-bit ZSCII character code: the next z-character gives the top 5 bits and the one after the bottom 5. However, in this version of the interpreter, only 8 bits are kept, and these are simply ASCII values.

z-character 7 causes a CRLF to be output.

Otherwise, we map the z-character to the ASCII character using the `a2_table` table.

```
69a  <A2 table 69a>≡ (211)
      a2_table:
          DC      "0123456789.,! ?_#"
          DC      ' '
          DC      "' /\-: ()"
```

Defines:

`a2_table`, used in chunks 69b and 90b.

```
69b  <Print the zchar 68a>+≡ (65a) <68b
      .map_ascii_for_A2:
          LDA      SCRATCH3
          SEC
          SBC      #$07
          BCC      .z10bits
          BEQ      .crlf
          TAY
          DEY
          LDA      a2_table,Y
          JMP      .printchar
```

Defines:

`.map_ascii_for_A2`, never used.

Uses `SCRATCH3` 208 and `a2_table` 69a.

```
69c  <Printing a CRLF 69c>≡ (211)
      .crlf:
          LDA      #$0D
          JSR      buffer_char
          LDA      #$0A
          JMP      .printchar
```

Defines:

`.crlf`, never used.

Uses `buffer_char` 59.

70a *⟨Printing a 10-bit ZSCII character 70a⟩*≡ (211)

```
.z10bits:
    JSR    get_next_zchar
    ASL
    ASL
    ASL
    ASL
    ASL
    ASL
    PHA
    JSR    get_next_zchar
    STA    SCRATCH3
    PLA
    ORA    SCRATCH3
    JMP    .printchar
```

Defines:

.z10bits, never used.

Uses SCRATCH3 208 and get\_next\_zchar 63.

print\_string\_literal is a high-level routine that prints a string literal to the screen, where the string literal is in z-code at the current Z\_PC.

70b *⟨Printing a string literal 70b⟩*≡ (211)

```
print_string_literal:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA    Z_PC
    STA    Z_PC2_L
    LDA    Z_PC+1
    STA    Z_PC2_H
    LDA    Z_PC+2
    STA    Z_PC2_HH
    LDA    #$00
    STA    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
    JSR    print_zstring
    LDA    Z_PC2_L
    STA    Z_PC
    LDA    Z_PC2_H
    STA    Z_PC+1
    LDA    Z_PC2_HH
    STA    Z_PC+2
    LDA    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
    STA    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
    LDA    ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2
    STA    ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR
    LDA    ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2+1
    STA    ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR+1
    RTS
```

Uses ZCODE\_PAGE\_ADDR 208, ZCODE\_PAGE\_ADDR2 208, ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID 208, ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID2 208, Z\_PC 208, Z\_PC2\_H 208, Z\_PC2\_HH 208, Z\_PC2\_L 208, and print\_zstring 64.



## The status line

Printing the status line involves saving the current cursor location, moving the cursor to the top left of the screen, setting inverse text, printing the current room name at column 0, printing the score at column 25, resetting inverse text, and then restoring the cursor location.

```

71  <Print status line 71>≡ (211)
    sScore:
        DC      "SCORE:"

    print_status_line:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      dump_buffer_line
        LDA      CH
        PHA
        LDA      CV
        PHA
        LDA      #$00
        STA      CH
        STA      CV
        JSR      VTAB
        LDA      #$3F
        STA      INVFLG
        JSR      CLREOL

        LDA      #VAR_CURR_ROOM
        JSR      var_get
        JSR      print_obj_in_A
        JSR      dump_buffer_to_screen

        LDA      #25
        STA      CH
        LDA      #<sScore
        STA      SCRATCH2
        LDA      #>sScore
        STA      SCRATCH2+1
        LDX      #$06
        JSR      cout_string

        INC      CH
        LDA      #VAR_SCORE
        JSR      var_get
        JSR      print_number

        LDA      #' /
        JSR      buffer_char

        LDA      #VAR_MAX_SCORE

```

```
JSR    var_get
JSR    print_number
JSR    dump_buffer_to_screen

LDA    #$FF
STA    INVFLG
PLA
STA    CV
PLA
STA    CH
JSR    VTAB
RTS
```

Defines:

    print\_status\_line, used in chunk 75.

    sScore, never used.

Uses CH 207, CLREQL 207, CV 207, INVFLG 207, SCRATCH2 208, VAR\_CURR\_ROOM 210b,  
VAR\_MAX\_SCORE 210b, VAR\_SCORE 210b, VTAB 207, buffer\_char 59, cout\_string 49,  
dump\_buffer\_line 55, dump\_buffer\_to\_screen 52, print\_number 106, print\_obj\_in\_A 140,  
and var\_get 125.

### 7.1.4 Input

The `read_line` routine dumps whatever is in the output buffer to the output, then reads a line of input from the keyboard, storing it in the `BUFF_AREA` buffer. The buffer is terminated with a newline character.

The routine then checks if the transcript flag is set in the header, and if so, it dumps the buffer to the printer. The buffer is then truncated to the maximum number of characters allowed.

The routine then converts the characters to lowercase, and returns.

The A register will contain the number of characters in the buffer.

```

73  <Read line 73>≡ (211)
    read_line:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR    dump_buffer_line
        LDA    WNDTOP
        STA    CURR_LINE
        JSR    GETLN1
        INC    CURR_LINE
        LDA    #$8D                ; newline
        STA    BUFF_AREA,X
        INX                      ; X = num of chars in input
        TXA
        PHA                      ; save X
        LDY    #HEADER_FLAGS2_OFFSET+1
        LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        AND    #$01                ; Mask for transcript on
        BEQ    .continue
        TXA
        STA    BUFF_END
        JSR    dump_buffer_to_printer
        LDA    #$00
        STA    BUFF_END

    .continue
        PLA                      ; restore num of chars in input
        LDY    #$00                ; truncate to max num of chars
        CMP    (OPERANDO),Y
        BCC    .continue2
        LDA    (OPERANDO),Y

    .continue2:
        PHA                      ; save num of chars
        BEQ    .end
        TAX

```

```
.loop:
    LDA    BUFF_AREA,Y    ; convert A-Z to lowercase
    AND    #$7F
    CMP    #$41
    BCC    .continue3
    CMP    #$5B
    BCS    .continue3
    ORA    #$20

.continue3:
    INY
    STA    (OPERANDO),Y
    CMP    #$0D
    BEQ    .end
    DEX
    BNE    .loop

.end:
    PLA                                ; restore num of chars
    RTS
```

Defines:

**read\_line**, used in chunk 75.

Uses **BUFF\_AREA** 208, **BUFF\_END** 208, **CURR\_LINE** 208, **GETLN1** 207, **HEADER\_FLAGS2\_OFFSET** 210a,  
**OPERANDO** 208, **WNDTOP** 207, **dump\_buffer\_line** 55, and **dump\_buffer\_to\_printer** 53.

### 7.1.5 Lexical parsing

After reading a line, the Z-machine needs to parse it into words and then look up those words in the dictionary. The `sread` instruction combines `read_line` with parsing.

`sread` redisplay the status line, then reads characters from the keyboard until a newline is entered. The characters are stored in the buffer at the z-address in `OPERAND0`, and parsed into the buffer at the z-address in `OPERAND1`.

Prior to this instruction, the first byte in the text buffer must contain the maximum number of characters to accept as input, minus 1.

After the line is read, the line is split into words (separated by the separators space, period, comma, question mark, carriage return, newline, tab, or formfeed), and each word is looked up in the dictionary.

The number of words parsed is written in byte 1 of the parse buffer, and then follows the tokens.

Each token is 4 bytes. The first two bytes are the address of the word in the dictionary (or 0 if not found), followed by the length of the word, followed by the index into the buffer where the word starts.

```

75  <Instruction sread 75>≡ (211) 76a>
    instr_sread:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      print_status_line
        ADDW     OPERAND0, Z_HEADER_ADDR, OPERAND0 ; text buffer
        ADDW     OPERAND1, Z_HEADER_ADDR, OPERAND1 ; parse buffer
        JSR      read_line ; SCRATCH3H = read_line() (input_count)
        STA      SCRATCH3+1
        LDA      #$00 ; SCRATCH3L = 0 (char count)
        STA      SCRATCH3
        LDY      #$01
        LDA      #$00 ; store 0 in the parse buffer + 1.
        STA      (OPERAND1),Y
        LDA      #$02
        STA      TOKEN_IDX
        LDA      #$01
        STA      INPUT_PTR

```

Defines:

`instr_sread`, used in chunk 112.

Uses `ADDW 15c`, `OPERAND0 208`, `OPERAND1 208`, `SCRATCH3 208`, `print_status_line 71`, and `read_line 73`.

Loop:

We check the next two bytes in the parse buffer, and if they are the same, we are done.

```

76a  <Instruction sread 75>+≡ (211) <75 76b>
      .loop_word:
          LDY    #$00          ; if parsebuf[0] == parsebuf[1] do_instruction
          LDA    (OPERAND1),Y
          INY
          CMP    (OPERAND1),Y
          BNE    .not_end1
          JMP    do_instruction

```

Uses OPERAND1 208 and do\_instruction 115.

Also, if the char count and input buffer len are zero, we are done.

```

76b  <Instruction sread 75>+≡ (211) <76a 76c>
      .not_end1:
          LDA    SCRATCH3+1    ; if input_count == char_count == 0 do_instruction
          ORA    SCRATCH3
          BNE    .not_end2
          JMP    do_instruction

```

Uses SCRATCH3 208 and do\_instruction 115.

If the char count isn't yet 6, then we need more chars.

```

76c  <Instruction sread 75>+≡ (211) <76b 77a>
      .not_end2:
          LDA    SCRATCH3      ; if char_count != 6 .not_min_compress_size
          CMP    #$06
          BNE    .not_min_compress_size
          JSR    skip_separators

```

Uses SCRATCH3 208 and skip\_separators 81.

If the char count is 0, then we can initialize the 6-byte area in ZCHAR\_SCRATCH1 with zero.

```

77a  <Instruction sread 75>+≡ (211) <76c 77b>
      .not_min_compress_size:
          LDA    SCRATCH3
          BNE    .not_separator
          LDY    #$06
          LDX    #$00

      .clear:
          LDA    #$00
          STA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH1,X
          INX
          DEY
          BNE    .clear

```

Uses SCRATCH3 208 and ZCHAR\_SCRATCH1 208.

Next we set up the token. Byte 3 in a token is the index into the text buffer where the word starts (INPUT\_PTR). We then check if the character pointed to is a dictionary separator (which needs to be treated as a word) or a standard separator (which needs to be skipped over). And if the character is a standard separator, we increment the input pointer and decrement the input count and loop back.

```

77b  <Instruction sread 75>+≡ (211) <77a 78a>
          LDA    INPUT_PTR          ; parsebuf[TOKEN_IDX+3] = INPUT_PTR
          LDY    TOKEN_IDX
          INY
          INY
          INY
          STA    (OPERAND1),Y
          LDY    INPUT_PTR          ; is_dict_separator(textbuf[INPUT_PTR])
          LDA    (OPERAND0),Y
          JSR    is_dict_separator
          BCS    .is_dict_separator
          LDY    INPUT_PTR          ; is_std_separator(textbuf[INPUT_PTR])
          LDA    (OPERAND0),Y
          JSR    is_std_separator
          BCC    .not_separator
          INC    INPUT_PTR          ; ++INPUT_PTR
          DEC    SCRATCH3+1         ; --input_count
          JMP    .loop_word

```

Uses OPERAND0 208, OPERAND1 208, SCRATCH3 208, is\_dict\_separator 82, and is\_std\_separator 82.

If `char_count` is zero, we have run out of characters, so we need to search through the dictionary with whatever we've collected in the `ZCHAR_SCRATCH1` buffer.

We also check if the character is a separator, and if so, we again search through the dictionary with whatever we've collected in the `ZCHAR_SCRATCH1` buffer.

Otherwise, we can store the character in the `ZCHAR_SCRATCH1` buffer, increment the char count and input pointer and decrement the input count. Then loop back.

```

78a  <Instruction sread 75>+≡ (211) <77b 78b>
      .not_separator:
          LDA      SCRATCH3+1
          BEQ      .search
          LDY      INPUT_PTR          ; is_separator(textbuf[INPUT_PTR])
          LDA      (OPERANDO),Y
          JSR      is_separator
          BCS      .search
          LDY      INPUT_PTR          ; ZCHAR_SCRATCH1[char_count] = textbuf[INPUT_PTR]
          LDA      (OPERANDO),Y
          LDX      SCRATCH3
          STA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH1,X
          DEC      SCRATCH3+1          ; --input_count
          INC      SCRATCH3            ; ++char_count
          INC      INPUT_PTR           ; ++INPUT_PTR
          JMP      .loop_word

```

Uses OPERANDO 208, SCRATCH3 208, ZCHAR\_SCRATCH1 208, and is\_separator 82.

If it's a dictionary separator, we store the character in the `ZCHAR_SCRATCH1` buffer, increment the char count and input pointer and decrement the input count. Then we fall through to search.

```

78b  <Instruction sread 75>+≡ (211) <78a 79>
      .is_dict_separator:
          STA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH1
          INC      SCRATCH3
          DEC      SCRATCH3+1
          INC      INPUT_PTR

```

Uses SCRATCH3 208, ZCHAR\_SCRATCH1 208, and is\_dict\_separator 82.



To begin, if we haven't collected any characters, then just go back and loop again.

Next, we store the number of characters in the token into the current token at byte 2. Although we will only compare the first 6 characters, we store the number of input characters in the token.

```

79  <Instruction sread 75>+≡ (211) <78b 80>
    .search:
        LDA    SCRATCH3
        BEQ    .loop_word
        LDA    SCRATCH3+1    ; Save input_count
        PHA
        LDY    TOKEN_IDX    ; parsebuf[TOKEN_IDX+2] = char_count
        INY
        INY
        LDA    SCRATCH3
        STA    (OPERAND1),Y
    Uses OPERAND1 208 and SCRATCH3 208.

```

We then convert these characters into z-characters, which we then search through the dictionary for. We store the z-address of the found token (or zero if not found) into the token, and then loop back for the next word.

```

80  <Instruction sread 75>+≡ (211) <79
      JSR      ascii_to_zchar
      JSR      match_dictionary_word
      LDY      TOKEN_IDX          ; parsebuf[TOKEN_IDX] = entry_addr
      LDA      SCRATCH1+1
      STA      (OPERAND1),Y
      INY
      LDA      SCRATCH1
      STA      (OPERAND1),Y

      INY
      INY
      INY
      STY      TOKEN_IDX

      LDY      #$01              ; ++parsebuf[1]
      LDA      (OPERAND1),Y
      CLC
      ADC      #$01
      STA      (OPERAND1),Y

      PLA
      STA      SCRATCH3+1
      LDA      #$00
      STA      SCRATCH3
      JMP      .loop_word

```

Uses OPERAND1 208, SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH3 208, ascii\_to\_zchar 83,  
and match\_dictionary\_word 93.

## Separators

81     $\langle \textit{Skip separators 81} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```
skip_separators:
  SUBROUTINE

      LDA      SCRATCH3+1
      BNE      .not_end
      RTS

.not_end:
      LDY      INPUT_PTR
      LDA      (OPERANDO),Y
      JSR      is_separator
      BCC      .not_separator
      RTS

.not_separator:
      INC      INPUT_PTR
      DEC      SCRATCH3+1
      INC      SCRATCH3
      JMP      skip_separators
```

Defines:

skip\_separators, used in chunk 76c.

Uses OPERANDO 208, SCRATCH3 208, and is\_separator 82.

82     $\langle$ Separator checks 82 $\rangle \equiv$  (211)

SEPARATORS\_TABLE:

DC       #\$20, #\$2E, #\$2C, #\$3F, #\$0D, #\$0A, #\$09, #\$0C

is\_separator:

SUBROUTINE

JSR       is\_dict\_separator

BCC       is\_std\_separator

RTS

is\_std\_separator:

SUBROUTINE

LDY       #\$00

LDX       #\$08

.loop:

CMP       SEPARATORS\_TABLE,Y

BEQ       separator\_found

INY

DEX

BNE       .loop

separator\_not\_found:

CLC

RTS

separator\_found:

SEC

RTS

is\_dict\_separator:

SUBROUTINE

PHA

JSR       get\_dictionary\_addr

LDY       #\$00

LDA       (SCRATCH2),Y

TAX

PLA

.loop:

BEQ       separator\_not\_found

INY

CMP       (SCRATCH2),Y

BEQ       separator\_found

DEX

JMP       .loop

Defines:

SEPARATORS\_TABLE, never used.  
 is\_dict\_separator, used in chunks 77b and 78b.  
 is\_separator, used in chunks 78a and 81.  
 is\_std\_separator, used in chunk 77b.  
 separator\_found, never used.  
 separator\_not\_found, never used.  
 Uses SCRATCH2 208 and get\_dictionary\_addr 92.

## ASCII to Z-chars

The `ascii_to_zchar` routine converts the ASCII characters in the input buffer to z-characters.

We first set the LOCKED\_ALPHABET shift to alphabet 0, and then clear the ZCHAR\_SCRATCH2 buffer with 05 (pad) zchars.

83     $\langle \text{ASCII to Zchar 83} \rangle \equiv$  (211) 84a>

```

  ascii_to_zchar:
    SUBROUTINE

      LDA    #$00
      STA    LOCKED_ALPHABET
      LDX    #$00
      LDY    #$06

    .clear:
      LDA    #$05
      STA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2,X
      INX
      DEY
      BNE    .clear

      LDA    #$06
      STA    SCRATCH3+1      ; nchars = 6
      LDA    #$00
      STA    SCRATCH1        ; dest_index = 0
      STA    SCRATCH2        ; index = 0

```

Defines:

ascii\_to\_zchar, used in chunk 80.  
 Uses LOCKED\_ALPHABET 208, SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH2 208, SCRATCH3 208,  
 and ZCHAR\_SCRATCH2 208.

Next we loop over the input buffer, converting each character in ZCHAR\_SCRATCH1 to a z-character. If the character is zero, we store a pad zchar.

```
84a  <ASCII to Zchar 83>+≡ (211) <83 84b>
      .loop:
        LDX    SCRATCH2          ; c = ZCHAR_SCRATCH1[index++]
        INC    SCRATCH2
        LDA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH1,X
        STA    SCRATCH3
        BNE    .continue
        LDA    #$05
        JMP    .store_zchar
```

Uses SCRATCH2 208, SCRATCH3 208, and ZCHAR\_SCRATCH1 208.

We first check to see which alphabet the character is in. If the alphabet is the same as the alphabet we're currently locked into, then we go to .same\_alphabet because we don't need to shift the alphabet.

```
84b  <ASCII to Zchar 83>+≡ (211) <84a 85b>
      .continue:
        LDA    SCRATCH1          ; save dest_index
        PHA
        LDA    SCRATCH3          ; alphabet = get_alphabet_for_char(c)
        JSR    get_alphabet_for_char
        STA    SCRATCH1
        CMP    LOCKED_ALPHABET
        BEQ    .same_alphabet
```

Uses LOCKED\_ALPHABET 208, SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH3 208, and get\_alphabet\_for\_char 85a.

85a  $\langle \text{Get alphabet for char 85a} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

get_alphabet_for_char:
    SUBROUTINE

    CMP    #$61
    BCC    .check_upper
    CMP    #$7B
    BCS    .check_upper
    LDA    #$00
    RTS

.check_upper:
    CMP    #$41
    BCC    .check_nonletter
    CMP    #$5B
    BCS    .check_nonletter
    LDA    #$01
    RTS

.check_nonletter:
    ORA    #$00
    BEQ    .return
    BMI    .return
    LDA    #$02

.return:
    RTS

```

Defines:

get\_alphabet\_for\_char, used in chunks 84b, 85b, and 89a.

Otherwise we check the next character to see if it's in the same alphabet as the current character. If they're different, then we should shift the alphabet, not lock it.

85b  $\langle \text{ASCII to Zchar 83} \rangle + \equiv$  (211)  $\langle 84b \ 86a \rangle$

```

LDX    SCRATCH2
LDA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH1,X
JSR    get_alphabet_for_char
CMP    SCRATCH1
BNE    .shift_alphabet

```

Uses SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH2 208, ZCHAR\_SCRATCH1 208, and get\_alphabet\_for\_char 85a.

We then determine which direction to shift lock the alphabet to, store the shifting character into `SCRATCH1+1`, and set the locked alphabet to the new alphabet.

```

86a  <ASCII to Zchar 83>+≡ (211) <85b 86b>
      SEC                      ; shift_char = shift lock char (4 or 5)
      SBC    LOCKED_ALPHABET
      CLC
      ADC    #$03
      JSR    A_mod_3
      CLC
      ADC    #$03
      STA    SCRATCH1+1
      MOVB   SCRATCH1, LOCKED_ALPHABET ; LOCKED_ALPHABET = alphabet

```

Uses `A_mod_3` 105, `LOCKED_ALPHABET` 208, `MOVB` 11b, and `SCRATCH1` 208.

Then we store the shift lock character into the destination buffer.

```

86b  <ASCII to Zchar 83>+≡ (211) <86a 86c>
      PLA                      ; restore dest_index
      STA    SCRATCH1
      LDA    SCRATCH1+1        ; ZCHAR_SCRATCH2[dest_index] = shift_char
      LDX    SCRATCH1
      STA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2,X
      INC    SCRATCH1          ; ++dest_index

```

Uses `SCRATCH1` 208 and `ZCHAR_SCRATCH2` 208.

If we've run out of room in the destination buffer, then we simply go to compress the destination buffer and return. Otherwise we will add the character to the destination buffer by going to `.same_alphabet`.

```

86c  <ASCII to Zchar 83>+≡ (211) <86b 88>
      DEC    SCRATCH3+1        ; --nchars
      BNE    .add_shifted_char
      JMP    z_compress

.add_shifted_char:
      LDA    SCRATCH1          ; save dest_index
      PHA
      JMP    .same_alphabet

```

Uses `SCRATCH1` 208, `SCRATCH3` 208, and `z_compress` 87.



The `z_compress` routine takes the 6 z-characters in `ZCHAR_SCRATCH2` and compresses them into 4 bytes.

```

87  <Z compress 87>≡ (211)
    z_compress:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+1
        ASL
        ASL
        ASL
        ASL
        ROL      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2
        ASL
        ROL      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2
        LDX      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2
        STX      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+1
        ORA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+2
        STA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2
        LDA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+4
        ASL
        ASL
        ASL
        ASL
        ROL      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+3
        ASL
        ROL      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+3
        LDX      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+3
        STX      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+3
        ORA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+5
        STA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+2
        LDA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+3
        ORA      #$80
        STA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+3
        RTS

```

Defines:

`z_compress`, used in chunks 86c, 88, 89b, and 91.

Uses `ZCHAR_SCRATCH2` 208.

To temporarily shift the alphabet, we determine which character we need to use to shift it out of the current alphabet (`LOCKED_ALPHABET`), and put it in the destination buffer. Then, if we've run out of characters in the destination buffer, we simply go to compress the destination buffer and return.

```

88  <ASCII to Zchar 83>+≡ (211) <86c 89a>
    .shift_alphabet:
        LDA    SCRATCH1          ; shift_char = shift char (2 or 3)
        SEC
        SBC    LOCKED_ALPHABET
        CLC
        ADC    #$03
        JSR    A_mod_3
        TAX
        INX
        PLA
        STA    SCRATCH1          ; restore dest_index
        TXA          ; ZCHAR_SCRATCH2[dest_index] = shift_char
        LDX    SCRATCH1
        STA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2,X
        INC    SCRATCH1          ; ++dest_index
        DEC    SCRATCH3+1        ; --nchars
        BNE    .save_dest_index_and_same_alphabet

    stretchy_z_compress:
        JMP    z_compress

```

Defines:

`stretchy_z_compress`, never used.

Uses `A_mod_3` 105, `LOCKED_ALPHABET` 208, `SCRATCH1` 208, `SCRATCH3` 208, `ZCHAR_SCRATCH2` 208, and `z_compress` 87.

If the character to save is lowercase, we can simply subtract `#$5B` such that 'a' = 6, and so on.

```

89a  <ASCII to Zchar 83>+≡ (211) <88 89b>
      .save_dest_index_and_same_alphabet:
          LDA    SCRATCH1          ; save dest_index
          PHA

      .same_alphabet:
          PLA
          STA    SCRATCH1          ; restore dest_index
          LDA    SCRATCH3
          JSR    get_alphabet_for_char
          SEC
          SBC    #$01              ; alphabet_minus_1 = case(c) - 1
          BPL    .not_lowercase
          LDA    SCRATCH3
          SEC
          SBC    #$5B              ; c -= 'a'-6

```

Uses SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH3 208, and get\_alphabet\_for\_char 85a.

Then we store the character in the destination buffer, and move on to the next character, unless the destination buffer is full, in which case we compress and return.

```

89b  <ASCII to Zchar 83>+≡ (211) <89a 89c>
      .store_zchar:
          LDX    SCRATCH1          ; ZCHAR_SCRATCH2[dest_index] = c
          STA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2,X
          INC    SCRATCH1          ; ++dest_index
          DEC    SCRATCH3+1        ; --nchars
          BEQ    .dest_full
          JMP    .loop

      .dest_full:
          JMP    z_compress

```

Uses SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH3 208, ZCHAR\_SCRATCH2 208, and z\_compress 87.

If the character was upper case, then we can subtract `#$3B` such that 'A' = 6, and so on, and then store the character in the same way.

```

89c  <ASCII to Zchar 83>+≡ (211) <89b 90a>
      .not_lowercase:
          BNE    .not_alphabetic
          LDA    SCRATCH3
          SEC
          SBC    #$3B              ; c -= 'A'-6
          JMP    .store_zchar

```

Uses SCRATCH3 208.

Now if the character isn't upper or lower case, then it's a non-alphabetic character. We first search in the non-alphabetic table, and if found, we can store that character and continue.

90a     $\langle \textit{ASCII to Zchar 83} \rangle + \equiv$  (211)  $\langle \textit{89c 91} \rangle$   
       `.not_alphabetic:`  
           `LDA        SCRATCH3`  
           `JSR        search_nonalpha_table`  
           `BNE        .store_zchar`  
       Uses `SCRATCH3 208` and `search_nonalpha_table 90b`.

90b     $\langle \textit{Search nonalpha table 90b} \rangle \equiv$  (211)  
       `search_nonalpha_table:`  
       `SUBROUTINE`  
           `LDX        #$24`  
       `.loop:`  
           `CMP        a2_table,X`  
           `BEQ        .found`  
           `DEX`  
           `BPL        .loop`  
           `LDY        #$00`  
           `RTS`  
       `.found:`  
           `TXA`  
           `CLC`  
           `ADC        #$08`  
           `RTS`

Defines:

`search_nonalpha_table`, used in chunk 90a.

Uses `a2_table 69a`.

If, however, the character is simply not representable in the z-characters, then we store a z-char newline (6), and, if there's still room in the destination buffer, we store the high 3 bits of the unrepresentable character and store it in the destination buffer, and, if there's still room, we take the low 5 bits and store that in the destination buffer.

This works because the newline character can never be a part of the input, so it serves here as an escaping character.

```

91  <ASCII to Zchar 83>+≡ (211) <90a
    LDA    #$06           ; ZCHAR_SCRATCH2[dest_index] = 6
    LDX    SCRATCH1
    STA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2,X
    INC    SCRATCH1       ; ++dest_index
    DEC    SCRATCH3+1     ; --nchars
    BEQ    z_compress

    LDA    SCRATCH3       ; ZCHAR_SCRATCH2[dest_index] = c >> 5
    LSR
    LSR
    LSR
    LSR
    LSR
    AND    #$03
    LDX    SCRATCH1
    STA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2,X
    INC    SCRATCH1       ; ++dest_index
    DEC    SCRATCH3+1     ; --nchars
    BEQ    z_compress

    LDA    SCRATCH3       ; c &= 0x1F
    AND    #$1F
    JMP    .store_zchar

```

Uses SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH3 208, ZCHAR\_SCRATCH2 208, and z\_compress 87.

## Searching the dictionary

The address of the dictionary is stored in the header, and the `get_dictionary_addr` routine gets the absolute address of the dictionary and stores it in `SCRATCH2`.

```
92  <Get dictionary address 92>≡ (211)
    get_dictionary_addr:
        SUBROUTINE

            LDY    #HEADER_DICT_OFFSET
            LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
            STA    SCRATCH2+1
            INY
            LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
            STA    SCRATCH2
            ADDW    SCRATCH2, Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
            RTS
```

Defines:

`get_dictionary_addr`, used in chunks 82 and 93.

Uses `ADDW 15c`, `HEADER_DICT_OFFSET 210a`, and `SCRATCH2 208`.

The `match_dictionary_word` routines searches for a word in the dictionary, returning in `SCRATCH1` the z-address of the matching dictionary entry, or zero if not found.

```

93  <Match dictionary word 93>≡ (211) 94a>
    match_dictionary_word:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      get_dictionary_addr
        LDY      #$00                ; number of dict separators
        LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        TAY
        INY                        ; skip past and get entry length
        LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        ASL
        ASL                        ; search_size = entry length x 16
        ASL
        ASL
        STA      SCRATCH3
        INY                        ; entry_index = num dict entries
        LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        STA      SCRATCH1+1
        INY
        LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        STA      SCRATCH1
        INY
        TYA
        ADDA     SCRATCH2            ; entry_addr = start of dictionary entries
        LDY      #$00
        JMP      .try_match

```

Defines:

`match_dictionary_word`, used in chunk 80.

Uses `ADDA 14a`, `SCRATCH1 208`, `SCRATCH2 208`, `SCRATCH3 208`, and `get_dictionary_addr 92`.

Since the dictionary is stored in lexicographic order, if we ever find a word that is greater than the word we are looking for, or we reach the end of the dictionary, then we can stop searching.

Instead of searching incrementally, we actually search in steps of 16 entries. When we've located the chunk of entries that our word should be in, we then search through the 16 entries to find the word, or fail.

```

94a  <Match dictionary word 93>+≡ (211) <93 94b>
      .loop:
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          CMP      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+1
          BCS      .possible

      .try_match:
          ADDB2    SCRATCH2, SCRATCH3      ; entry_addr += search_size
          SEC                                ; entry_index -= 16
          LDA      SCRATCH1
          SBC      #$10
          STA      SCRATCH1
          BCS      .loop
          DEC      SCRATCH1+1
          BPL      .loop

```

Uses ADDB2 15b, SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH2 208, SCRATCH3 208, and ZCHAR\_SCRATCH2 208.

```

94b  <Match dictionary word 93>+≡ (211) <94a 95>
      .possible:
          SUBB2    SCRATCH2, SCRATCH3      ; entry_addr -= search_size
          ADDB2    SCRATCH1, #$10          ; entry_index += 16
          LDA      SCRATCH3                ; search_size /= 16
          LSR
          LSR
          LSR
          LSR
          STA      SCRATCH3

```

Uses ADDB2 15b, SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH2 208, SCRATCH3 208, and SUBB2 17a.



Now we compare the word. The words in the dictionary are numerically big-endian while the words in the ZCHAR\_SCRATCH2 buffer are numerically little-endian, which explains the unusual order of the comparisons.

Since we know that the dictionary word must be in this chunk of 16 words if it exists, then if our word is less than the dictionary word, we can stop searching and declare failure.

```

95  <Match dictionary word 93>+≡ (211) <94b 96a>
    .inner_loop:
        LDY    #$00
        LDA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+1
        CMP    (SCRATCH2),Y
        BCC    .not_found
        BNE    .inner_next

        INY
        LDA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2
        CMP    (SCRATCH2),Y
        BCC    .not_found
        BNE    .inner_next

        LDY    #$02
        LDA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+3
        CMP    (SCRATCH2),Y
        BCC    .not_found
        BNE    .inner_next

        INY
        LDA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+2
        CMP    (SCRATCH2),Y
        BCC    .not_found
        BEQ    .found

    .inner_next:
        ADB2    SCRATCH2, SCRATCH3    ; entry_addr += search_size
        SUBB    SCRATCH1, #$01        ; --entry_index
        LDA    SCRATCH1
        ORA    SCRATCH1+1
        BNE    .inner_loop

Uses ADB2 15b, SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH2 208, SCRATCH3 208, SUBB 16b,
and ZCHAR_SCRATCH2 208.

```

If the search failed, we return 0 in SCRATCH1.

```
96a  <Match dictionary word 93>+≡ (211) <95 96b>
      .not_found:
          LDA    #$00
          STA    SCRATCH1+1
          STA    SCRATCH1
          RTS
      Uses SCRATCH1 208.
```

Otherwise, return the z-address (i.e. the absolute address minus the header address) of the dictionary entry.

```
96b  <Match dictionary word 93>+≡ (211) <96a>
      .found:
          SUBW    SCRATCH2, Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH1
          RTS
      Uses SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH2 208, and SUBW 17b.
```

## Chapter 8

# Arithmetic routines

### 8.1 Negation and sign manipulation

`negate` negates the word in `SCRATCH2`.

97     $\langle \textit{negate}$  97  $\rangle \equiv$  (211)  
      `negate:`  
      SUBROUTINE  
  
      SUBW       #\$0000, `SCRATCH2`, `SCRATCH2`  
      RTS

Defines:

`negate`, used in chunks 98a, 99, and 107.

Uses `SCRATCH2` 208 and SUBW 17b.

`flip_sign` negates the word in `SCRATCH2` if the sign bit in the `A` register is set, i.e. if signed `A` is negative. We also keep track of the number of flips in `SIGN_BIT`.

98a  $\langle \textit{Flip sign 98a} \rangle \equiv$  (211)  
`flip_sign:`  
 SUBROUTINE

```

ORA    #$00
BMI    .do_negate
RTS

```

```

.do_negate:
  INC    SIGN_BIT
  JMP    negate

```

Defines:

`flip_sign`, used in chunk 98b.

Uses `negate` 97.

`check_sign` sets the sign bit of `SCRATCH2` to support a 16-bit signed multiply, divide, or modulus operation on `SCRATCH1` and `SCRATCH2`. That is, if the sign bits are the same, `SCRATCH2` retains its sign bit, otherwise its sign bit is flipped.

The `SIGN_BIT` value also contains the number of negative sign bits in `SCRATCH1` and `SCRATCH2`, so 0, 1, or 2.

98b  $\langle \textit{Check sign 98b} \rangle \equiv$  (211)  
`check_sign:`  
 SUBROUTINE

```

LDA    #$00
STA    SIGN_BIT
LDA    SCRATCH2+1
JSR    flip_sign
LDA    SCRATCH1+1
JSR    flip_sign
RTS

```

Defines:

`check_sign`, used in chunks 174–76.

Uses `SCRATCH1` 208, `SCRATCH2` 208, and `flip_sign` 98a.

`set_sign` checks the number of negatives counted up in `SIGN_BIT` and sets the sign bit of `SCRATCH2` accordingly. That is, odd numbers of negative signs will flip the sign bit of `SCRATCH2`.

99     $\langle \textit{Set sign 99} \rangle \equiv$  (211)  
      `set_sign:`  
      SUBROUTINE

```
      LDA     SIGN_BIT
      AND     #$01
      BNE     negate
      RTS
```

Defines:

`set_sign`, used in chunk 176.

Uses `negate` 97.

## 8.2 16-bit multiplication

`mulu16` multiplies the unsigned word in `SCRATCH1` by the unsigned word in `SCRATCH2`, storing the result in `SCRATCH1`.

Note that this routine only handles unsigned multiplication. Taking care of signs is part of `instr_mul`, which uses this routine and the sign manipulation routines.

```

100  <mulu16 100>≡ (211)
      mulu16:
          SUBROUTINE

          PSHW    SCRATCH3
          STOW     #$0000, SCRATCH3
          LDX      #$10

      .loop:
          LDA      SCRATCH1
          CLC
          AND      #$01
          BEQ      .next_bit
          ADDWC    SCRATCH2, SCRATCH3, SCRATCH3

      .next_bit:
          RORW     SCRATCH3
          RORW     SCRATCH1
          DEX
          BNE      .loop

          MOVW     SCRATCH1, SCRATCH2
          MOVW     SCRATCH3, SCRATCH1
          PULW     SCRATCH3
          RTS

```

Defines:

`mulu16`, used in chunk 176.

Uses `ADDWC` 16a, `MOVW` 12a, `PSHW` 12b, `PULW` 13a, `RORW` 18, `SCRATCH1` 208, `SCRATCH2` 208, `SCRATCH3` 208, and `STOW` 10.

### 8.3 16-bit division

`divu16` divides the unsigned word in `SCRATCH2` (the dividend) by the unsigned word in `SCRATCH1` (the divisor), storing the quotient in `SCRATCH2` and the remainder in `SCRATCH1`.

Under this routine, the result of division by zero is a quotient of  $2^{16} - 1$ , while the remainder depends on the high bit of the dividend. If the dividend's high bit is 0, the remainder is the dividend. If the dividend's high bit is 1, the remainder is the dividend with the high bit set to 0.

Note that this routine only handles unsigned division. Taking care of signs is part of `instr_div`, which uses this routine and the sign manipulation routines.

The idea behind this routine is to do long division. We bring the dividend into a scratch space one bit at a time (starting with the most significant bit) and see if the divisor fits into it. If it does, we can record a 1 in the quotient, and subtract the divisor from the scratch space. If it doesn't, we record a 0 in the quotient. We do this for all 16 bits in the dividend. Whatever remains in the scratch space is the remainder.

For example, suppose we want to divide decimal `SCRATCH2 = 37 = 0b10101` by `SCRATCH1 = 10 = 0b1010`. This is something the `print_number` routine might do.

The routine starts with storing `SCRATCH2` to `SCRATCH3 = 37 = 0b100101` and then setting `SCRATCH2` to zero. This is our scratch space, and will ultimately become the remainder.

Interestingly here, we don't start with shifting the dividend. Instead we do the subtraction first. There's no harm in this, since we are guaranteed that the subtraction will fail (be negative) on the first iteration, so we shift in a zero.

It should be clear that as we shift the dividend into the scratch space, eventually the scratch space will contain `0b10010`, and the subtraction will succeed. We then shift in a 1 into the quotient, and subtract the divisor `0b1010` from the scratch space `0b10010`, leaving `0b1000`. There is now only one bit left in the dividend (1).

We shift that into the scratch space, which is now `0b10001`, and the subtraction will succeed again. We shift in a 1 into the quotient, and subtract the divisor from the scratch space, leaving `0b111`. There are no bits left in the dividend, so we are done. The quotient is `0b11 = 3` and the scratch space is `0b111 = 7`, which is the remainder as expected.

Because the algorithm always does the shift, it will also shift the remainder one time too many, which is why the last step is to shift it right and store the result.

Here's a trace of the algorithm:

```

102  <trace of divu16 102>≡
    Begin, x=17: s1=00000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=0000000000100101
    Loop,  x=16: s1=00000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=00000000001001010
    Loop,  x=15: s1=00000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=000000000010010100
    Loop,  x=14: s1=00000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=000000001001010000
    Loop,  x=13: s1=00000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=000000010010100000
    Loop,  x=12: s1=00000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=000000100101000000
    Loop,  x=11: s1=00000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=000001001010000000
    Loop,  x=10: s1=00000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=000100101000000000
    Loop,  x=09: s1=00000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=001001010000000000
    Loop,  x=08: s1=00000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=010010100000000000
    Loop,  x=07: s1=00000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=100101000000000000
    Loop,  x=06: s1=00000000000001010, s2=00000000000000001, s3=001010000000000000
    Loop,  x=05: s1=00000000000001010, s2=00000000000000010, s3=010100000000000000
    Loop,  x=04: s1=00000000000001010, s2=00000000000000100, s3=101000000000000000
    Loop,  x=03: s1=00000000000001010, s2=00000000000001001, s3=010000000000000000
    Loop,  x=02: s1=00000000000001010, s2=00000000000010010, s3=100000000000000000
    Loop,  x=01: s1=00000000000001010, s2=00000000000010001, s3=00000000000000001
    Loop,  x=00: s1=00000000000001010, s2=00000000000001110, s3=00000000000000011
    End,    x=00: s1=00000000000001010, s2=00000000000001110, s3=00000000000000011
    After adjustment shift and remainder storage:
    End,    x=00: s1=0000000000000111, s2=0000000000000011

```



Notice that `SCRATCH3` is used for both the dividend and the quotient. As we shift bits out of the left of the dividend and into the scratch space `SCRATCH2`, we also shift bits into the right as the quotient. After going through 16 bits, the dividend is all out and the quotient is all in.

103  $\langle \text{divu16 } 103 \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```
divu16:
    SUBROUTINE

    PSHW    SCRATCH3
    MOVW    SCRATCH2, SCRATCH3 ; SCRATCH3 is the dividend
    STOW    #$0000, SCRATCH2 ; SCRATCH2 is the remainder
    LDX     #$11

.loop:
    SEC                                ; carry = "not borrow"
    LDA     SCRATCH2                    ; Remainder minus divisor (low byte)
    SBC     SCRATCH1
    TAY
    LDA     SCRATCH2+1
    SBC     SCRATCH1+1
    BCC     .skip                       ; Divisor did not fit

    ; At this point carry is set, which will affect
    ; the ROLs below.

    STA     SCRATCH2+1                ; Save remainder
    TYA
    STA     SCRATCH2

.skip:
    ROLW    SCRATCH3                  ; Shift carry into divisor/quotient left
    ROLW    SCRATCH2                  ; Shift divisor/remainder left
    DEX
    BNE     .loop                     ; loop end

    CLC                                ; SCRATCH1 = SCRATCH2 >> 1
    LDA     SCRATCH2+1
    ROR
    STA     SCRATCH1+1
    LDA     SCRATCH2
    ROR
    STA     SCRATCH1                  ; remainder
    MOVW    SCRATCH3, SCRATCH2 ; quotient
    PULW    SCRATCH3
    RTS
```

Defines:

`divu16`, used in chunks 106, 174, 175, and 177a.

Uses `MOVW 12a`, `PSHW 12b`, `PULW 13a`, `ROLW 17c`, `SCRATCH1 208`, `SCRATCH2 208`, `SCRATCH3 208`, and `STOW 10`.

## 8.4 16-bit comparison

`cmpu16` compares the unsigned words in `SCRATCH2` to the unsigned word in `SCRATCH1`. For example, if, as an unsigned comparison, `SCRATCH2 < SCRATCH1`, then `BCC` will detect this condition.

104a  $\langle \text{cmpu16 } 104a \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

    cmpu16:
        SUBROUTINE

            LDA    SCRATCH2+1
            CMP    SCRATCH1+1
            BNE    .end
            LDA    SCRATCH2
            CMP    SCRATCH1
        .end:
        RTS

```

Defines:

`cmpu16`, used in chunks 104b and 184a.

Uses `SCRATCH1` 208 and `SCRATCH2` 208.

`cmp16` compares the two signed words in `SCRATCH1` and `SCRATCH2`.

104b  $\langle \text{cmp16 } 104b \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

    cmp16:
        SUBROUTINE

            LDA    SCRATCH1+1
            EOR    SCRATCH2+1
            BPL    cmpu16
            LDA    SCRATCH1+1
            CMP    SCRATCH2+1
        RTS

```

Defines:

`cmp16`, used in chunks 180a, 182a, and 183a.

Uses `SCRATCH1` 208, `SCRATCH2` 208, and `cmpu16` 104a.

## 8.5 Other routines

`A_mod_3` is a routine that calculates the modulus of the `A` register with 3, by repeatedly subtracting 3 until the result is less than 3. It is used in the Z-machine to calculate the alphabet shift.

```

105   $\langle A \bmod 3 \rangle \equiv$  (211)
      A_mod_3:
          CMP      #$03
          BCC      .end
          SEC
          SBC      #$03
          JMP      A_mod_3

      .end:
          RTS

```

Defines:

`A_mod_3`, used in chunks 66, 86a, and 88.

## 8.6 Printing numbers

The `print_number` routine prints the signed number in `SCRATCH2` as decimal to the output buffer.

106 *<Print number 106>*≡ (211)

```

print_number:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA    SCRATCH2+1
    BPL    .print_positive
    JSR    print_negative_num

.print_positive:
    STOB    #$00, SCRATCH3

.loop:
    LDA    SCRATCH2+1
    ORA    SCRATCH2
    BEQ    .is_zero
    STOW    #$000A, SCRATCH1
    JSR    divu16
    LDA    SCRATCH1
    PHA
    INC    SCRATCH3
    JMP    .loop

.is_zero:
    LDA    SCRATCH3
    BEQ    .print_0

.print_digit:
    PLA
    CLC
    ADC    #$30            ; '0'
    JSR    buffer_char
    DEC    SCRATCH3
    BNE    .print_digit
    RTS

.print_0:
    LDA    #$30            ; '0'
    JMP    buffer_char

```

Defines:

`print_number`, used in chunks 71 and 189a.

Uses `SCRATCH1` 208, `SCRATCH2` 208, `SCRATCH3` 208, `STOB` 11b, `STOW` 10, `buffer_char` 59, `divu16` 103, and `print_negative_num` 107.

The `print_negative_num` routine is a utility used by `print_num`, just to print the negative sign and negate the number before printing the rest.

```
107  ⟨Print negative number 107⟩≡ (211)
      print_negative_num:
      SUBROUTINE

      LDA    #2D          ; '-'
      JSR    buffer_char
      JMP    negate
```

Defines:

`print_negative_num`, used in chunk 106.

Uses `buffer_char` 59 and `negate` 97.

## Chapter 9

# Disk routines

```
108  <iob struct 108>≡ (211)
    iob:
        DC      #$01          ; table_type (must be 1)
    iob.slot_times_16:
        DC      #$60          ; slot_times_16
    iob.drive:
        DC      #$01          ; drive_number
        DC      #$00          ; volume
    iob.track:
        DC      #$00          ; track
    iob.sector:
        DC      #$00          ; sector
        DC.W    #dct          ; dct_addr
    iob.buffer:
        DC.W    #$0000        ; buffer_addr
        DC      #$00          ; unused
        DC      #$00          ; partial_byte_count
    iob.command:
        DC      #$00          ; command
        DC      #$00          ; ret_code
        DC      #$00          ; last_volume
        DC      #$60          ; last_slot_times_16
        DC      #$00          ; last_drive_number

    dct:
        DC      #$00          ; device_type (0 for DISK II)
        DC      #$01          ; phases_per_track (1 for DISK II)
    dct.motor_count:
        DC.W    #$EFD8        ; motor_on_time_count ($EFD8 for DISK II)
```

Defines:

dct, used in chunk 111.

iob, used in chunks 109, 149, and 151.

```

iob.buffer, never used.
iob.command, never used.
iob.drive, never used.
iob.sector, never used.
iob.slot.times.16, never used.
iob.track, never used.

```

The `do_rwts_on_sector` can read or write a sector using the RWTS routine in DOS. `SCRATCH1` contains the sector number relative to track 3 sector 0 (and can be  $\geq 16$ ), and `SCRATCH2` contains the buffer to read into or write from.

The A register contains the command: 1 for read, and 2 for write.

```

109  <Do RWTS on sector 109>≡ (211)
      do_rwts_on_sector:
          SUBROUTINE

              STA      iob.command
              LDA      SCRATCH2
              STA      iob.buffer
              LDA      SCRATCH2+1
              STA      iob.buffer+1
              LDA      #$03
              STA      iob.track
              LDA      SCRATCH1
              LDX      SCRATCH1+1
              SEC

      .adjust_track:
          SBC      SECTORS_PER_TRACK
          BCS      .inc_track
          DEX
          BMI      .do_read
          SEC

      .inc_track:
          INC      iob.track
          JMP      .adjust_track

      .do_read:
          CLC
          ADC      SECTORS_PER_TRACK
          STA      iob.sector
          LDA      #$1D
          LDY      #$AC
          JSR      RWTS
          RTS

```

Defines:

`do_rwts_on_sector`, used in chunks 110 and 111.

Uses RWTS 208, SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH2 208, SECTORS\_PER\_TRACK 208, and iob 108.

The `read_from_sector` routine reads the sector number in `SCRATCH1` from the disk into the buffer in `SCRATCH2`. Other entry points are `read_next_sector`, which sets the buffer to `BUFF_AREA`, increments `SCRATCH1` and then reads, and `inc_sector_and_read`, which does the same but assumes the buffer has already been set in `SCRATCH2`.

110     $\langle$ Reading sectors 110 $\rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

read_next_sector:
    SUBROUTINE

    STOW    #BUFF_AREA, SCRATCH2

inc_sector_and_read:
    SUBROUTINE

    INCW    SCRATCH1

read_from_sector:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA     #$01
    JSR     do_rwts_on_sector
    RTS

```

Defines:

`inc_sector_and_read`, used in chunk 157b.  
`read_from_sector`, used in chunks 31b, 32, 42, and 45.  
`read_next_sector`, used in chunks 155c and 157a.

Uses `BUFF_AREA` 208, `INCW` 13b, `SCRATCH1` 208, `SCRATCH2` 208, `STOW` 10, and `do_rwts_on_sector` 109.



For some reason the `write_next_sector` routine temporarily stores the standard `#$D8EF` into the disk motor on-time count. There doesn't seem to be any reason for this, since the motor count is never set to anything else.

```

111  <Writing sectors 111>≡ (211)
      write_next_sector:
          SUBROUTINE

          STOW      #BUFF_AREA, SCRATCH2

      inc_sector_and_write:
          SUBROUTINE

          INCW      SCRATCH1

      .write_next_sector:
          LDA      dct.motor_count
          PHA
          LDA      dct.motor_count+1
          PHA
          STOW2     #$D8EF, dct.motor_count
          LDA      #$02
          JSR      do_rwts_on_sector
          PLA
          STA      dct.motor_count+1
          PLA
          STA      dct.motor_count
          RTS

```

Defines:

`inc_sector_and_write`, used in chunk 154b.  
`write_next_sector`, used in chunks 153b and 154a.

Uses `BUFF_AREA` 208, `INCW` 13b, `SCRATCH1` 208, `SCRATCH2` 208, `STOW` 10, `STOW2` 11a, `dct` 108,  
and `do_rwts_on_sector` 109.

## Chapter 10

# The instruction dispatcher

### 10.1 Executing an instruction

The addresses for instructions handlers are stored in tables, organized by number of operands:

```
112  <Instruction tables 112>≡ (211)
      routines_table_0op:
          WORD    instr_rtrue
          WORD    instr_rfalse
          WORD    instr_print
          WORD    instr_print_ret
          WORD    instr_nop
          WORD    instr_save
          WORD    instr_restore
          WORD    instr_restart
          WORD    instr_ret_popped
          WORD    instr_pop
          WORD    instr_quit
          WORD    instr_new_line

      routines_table_1op:
          WORD    instr_jz
          WORD    instr_get_sibling
          WORD    instr_get_child
          WORD    instr_get_parent
          WORD    instr_get_prop_len
          WORD    instr_inc
          WORD    instr_dec
          WORD    instr_print_addr
          WORD    illegal_opcode
```

```
WORD    instr_remove_obj
WORD    instr_print_obj
WORD    instr_ret
WORD    instr_jump
WORD    instr_print_paddr
WORD    instr_load
WORD    instr_not
```

```
routines_table_2op:
WORD    illegal_opcode
WORD    instr_je
WORD    instr_jl
WORD    instr_jg
WORD    instr_dec_chk
WORD    instr_inc_chk
WORD    instr_jin
WORD    instr_test
WORD    instr_or
WORD    instr_and
WORD    instr_test_attr
WORD    instr_set_attr
WORD    instr_clear_attr
WORD    instr_store
WORD    instr_insert_obj
WORD    instr_loadw
WORD    instr_loadb
WORD    instr_get_prop
WORD    instr_get_prop_addr
WORD    instr_get_next_prop
WORD    instr_add
WORD    instr_sub
WORD    instr_mul
WORD    instr_div
WORD    instr_mod
```

```
routines_table_var:
WORD    instr_call
WORD    instr_storew
WORD    instr_storeb
WORD    instr_put_prop
WORD    instr_sread
WORD    instr_print_char
WORD    instr_print_num
WORD    instr_random
WORD    instr_push
WORD    instr_pull
```

Defines:

```
routines_table_0op, used in chunk 116b.
routines_table_1op, used in chunk 118b.
routines_table_2op, used in chunk 120c.
```

`routines_table_var`, used in chunk 122.  
 Uses `illegal_opcode` 161, `instr_add` 173b, `instr_and` 178a, `instr_call` 128,  
`instr_clear_attr` 190, `instr_dec` 173a, `instr_dec_chk` 179b, `instr_div` 174,  
`instr_get_next_prop` 192, `instr_get_parent` 193, `instr_get_prop` 194,  
`instr_get_prop_addr` 197, `instr_get_prop_len` 198, `instr_get_sibling` 199,  
`instr_inc` 172c, `instr_inc_chk` 180a, `instr_insert_obj` 200, `instr_je` 180b,  
`instr_jg` 182a, `instr_jin` 182b, `instr_jl` 183a, `instr_jump` 185a, `instr_jz` 183b,  
`instr_load` 168a, `instr_loadb` 169a, `instr_loadw` 168b, `instr_mod` 175, `instr_mul` 176,  
`instr_new_line` 187b, `instr_nop` 203a, `instr_not` 178b, `instr_or` 179a, `instr_pop` 171b,  
`instr_print` 188a, `instr_print_addr` 188b, `instr_print_char` 188c, `instr_print_num` 189a,  
`instr_print_obj` 189b, `instr_print_paddr` 189c, `instr_print_ret` 185b, `instr_pull` 172a,  
`instr_push` 172b, `instr_put_prop` 201, `instr_quit` 204, `instr_random` 177a,  
`instr_remove_obj` 202a, `instr_restart` 203b, `instr_restore` 155b, `instr_ret` 132,  
`instr_ret_popped` 186a, `instr_rfalse` 186b, `instr_rtrue` 187a, `instr_save` 152a,  
`instr_set_attr` 202b, `instr_sread` 75, `instr_store` 169b, `instr_storeb` 171a,  
`instr_storew` 170, `instr_sub` 177c, `instr_test` 184a, and `instr_test_attr` 184b.

Instructions from this table get executed with all operands loaded in `OPERANDO-OPERAND3`,  
 the address of the routine table to use in `SCRATCH2`, and the index into the table  
 stored in the A register. Then we can execute the instruction. This involves  
 looking up the routine address, storing it in `SCRATCH1`, and jumping to it.

All instructions must, when they are complete, jump back to `do_instruction`.

114     $\langle \text{Execute instruction 114} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

.opcode_table_jump:
    ASL
    TAY
    LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
    STA      SCRATCH1
    INY
    LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
    STA      SCRATCH1+1
    JSR      DEBUG_JUMP
    JMP      (SCRATCH1)
  
```

Defines:

`.opcode_table_jump`, never used.

Uses `DEBUG_JUMP` 208, `SCRATCH1` 208, and `SCRATCH2` 208.

The call to `debug` is just a return, but I suspect that it was used during development to provide a place to put a debugging hook, for example, to print out the state of the Z-machine on every instruction.

## 10.2 Retrieving the instruction

We execute the instruction at the current program counter by first retrieving its opcode. `get_next_code_byte` retrieves the code byte at `Z_PC`, placing it in `A`, and then increments `Z_PC`.

115

<Do instruction 115>≡(211) 116a>

do\_instruction:

SUBROUTINE

MOVWZ\_PC, TMP\_Z\_PC; Save PC for debugging

LDAZ\_PC+2

STATMP\_Z\_PC+2

STOB#\$00, OPERAND\_COUNT

JSRget\_next\_code\_byte

STACURR\_OPCODE

Defines:  
do\_instruction, used in chunks 35b, 76, 131b, 162, 164b, 167, 169–73, 187–90, and 200–203.  
Uses CURR\_OPCODE 208, MOVW 12a, OPERAND\_COUNT 208, STOB 11b, TMP\_Z\_PC 208, Z\_PC 208, and get\_next\_code\_byte 39.

Byte range	Type
0x00-0x7F	2op
0x80-0xAF	1op
0xB0-0xBF	0op
0xC0-0xFF	needs next byte to determine

## 10.3 Decoding the instruction

Next, we determine how many operands to read. Note that for instructions that store a value, the storage location is not part of the operands; it comes after the operands, and is determined by the individual instruction's routine.

```

116a  <Do instruction 115>+≡ (211) <115
      CMP    $$80          ; is 2op?
      BCS    .is_gte_80
      JMP    .do_2op

      .is_gte_80:
      CMP    $$B0          ; is 1op?
      BCS    .is_gte_B0
      JMP    .do_1op

      .is_gte_B0:
      CMP    $$C0          ; is 0op?
      BCC    .do_0op
      JSR    get_next_code_byte

      ; Falls through to varop handling.

      <Handle varop instructions 121>
Uses get_next_code_byte 39.

```

### 10.3.1 0op instructions

Handling a 0op-type instruction is easy enough. We check for the legal opcode range (`$$B0-$$BB`), otherwise it's an illegal instruction. Then we load the address of the 0op instruction table into `SCRATCH2`, leaving the `A` register with the offset into the table of the instruction to execute.

```

116b  <Handle 0op instructions 116b>≡ (211)
      .do_0op:
      SEC
      SBC    $$B0
      CMP    $$0C
      BCC    .load_opcode_table
      JMP    illegal_opcode

      .load_opcode_table:
      PHA
      STOW   routines_table_0op, SCRATCH2
      PLA
      JMP    .opcode_table_jump
Uses SCRATCH2 208, STOW 10, illegal_opcode 161, and routines_table_0op 112.

```

### 10.3.2 1op instructions

Handling a 1op-type instruction (opcodes #80-#AF) is a little more complicated. Since only opcodes #X8 are illegal, this is handled in the 1op routine table.

Opcodes #80-#8F take a 16-bit operand.

```
117a  <Handle 1op instructions 117a>≡ (211) 117b>
      .do_1op:
          AND    $$30
          BNE    .is_90_to_AF
          JSR    get_const_word ; Get operand for opcodes 80-8F
          JMP    .1op_arg_loaded
      Uses get_const_word 123b.
```

Opcodes #90-#9F take an 8-bit operand zero-extended to 16 bits.

```
117b  <Handle 1op instructions 117a>+≡ (211) <117a 117c>
      .is_90_to_AF:
          CMP    $$10
          BNE    .is_A0_to_AF
          JSR    get_const_byte ; Get operand for opcodes 90-9F
          JMP    .1op_arg_loaded
      Uses get_const_byte 123a.
```

Opcodes #A0-#AF take a variable number operand, whose content is 16 bits.

```
117c  <Handle 1op instructions 117a>+≡ (211) <117b 117d>
      .is_A0_to_AF:
          JSR    get_var_content ; Get operand for opcodes A0-AF
      Uses get_var_content 124.
```

The resulting 16-bit operand is placed in OPERANDO, and OPERAND\_COUNT is set to 1.

```
117d  <Handle 1op instructions 117a>+≡ (211) <117c 118a>
      .1op_arg_loaded:
          STOB    $$01, OPERAND_COUNT
          MOVW    SCRATCH2, OPERANDO
      Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 208, OPERAND_COUNT 208, SCRATCH2 208, and STOB 11b.
```

Then we check for illegal instructions, which in this case never happens. This could have been left over from a previous version of the z-machine where the range of legal 1op instructions was different.

```
118a  <Handle 1op instructions 117a>+≡ (211) <117d 118b>
      LDA      CURR_OPCODE
      AND      #$0F
      CMP      #$10
      BCC      .go_to_1op
      JMP      illegal_opcode
Uses CURR_OPCODE 208 and illegal_opcode 161.
```

Then we load the 1op instruction table into SCRATCH2, leaving the A register with the offset into the table of the instruction to execute.

```
118b  <Handle 1op instructions 117a>+≡ (211) <118a>
      .go_to_1op:
      PHA
      STOW     routines_table_1op, SCRATCH2
      PLA
      JMP      .opcode_table_jump
Uses SCRATCH2 208, STOW 10, and routines_table_1op 112.
```



### 10.3.3 2op instructions

Handling a 2op-type instruction (opcodes #00-#7F) is a little more complicated than 1op instructions.

The operands are determined by bits 6 and 5, while bits 4 through 0 determine the instruction.

The first operand is determined by bit 6. Opcodes with bit 6 clear are followed by a single byte to be zero-extended into a 16-bit operand, while opcodes with bit 6 set are followed by a single byte representing a variable number. This operand is stored in OPERANDO.

```

119a  <Handle 2op instructions 119a>≡ (211) 119b>
      .do_2op:
          AND      #$40
          BNE      .first_arg_is_var
          JSR      get_const_byte
          JMP      .get_next_arg

      .first_arg_is_var:
          JSR      get_var_content

      .get_next_arg:
          MOVW     SCRATCH2, OPERANDO

```

Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 208, SCRATCH2 208, get\_const\_byte 123a, and get\_var\_content 124.

The second operand is determined by bit 5. Opcodes with bit 5 clear are followed by a single byte to be zero-extended into a 16-bit operand, while opcodes with bit 5 set are followed by a single byte representing a variable number. This operand is stored in OPERAND1.

```

119b  <Handle 2op instructions 119a>+≡ (211) <119a 120a>
      LDA      CURR_OPCODE
      AND      #$20
      BNE      .second_arg_is_var
      JSR      get_const_byte
      JMP      .store_second_arg

      .second_arg_is_var:
          JSR      get_var_content

      .store_second_arg:
          MOVW     SCRATCH2, OPERAND1

```

Uses CURR\_OPCODE 208, MOVW 12a, OPERAND1 208, SCRATCH2 208, get\_const\_byte 123a, and get\_var\_content 124.

OPERAND\_COUNT is set to 2.

120a  $\langle \text{Handle 2op instructions 119a} \rangle + \equiv$  (211)  $\triangleleft 119b \ 120b \triangleright$   
       STOB       #\$02, OPERAND\_COUNT  
 Uses OPERAND\_COUNT 208 and STOB 11b.

Then we check for illegal instructions, which are those with the low 5 bits in the range #19-#1F.

120b  $\langle \text{Handle 2op instructions 119a} \rangle + \equiv$  (211)  $\triangleleft 120a \ 120c \triangleright$   
       LDA       CURR\_OPCODE

```
.check_for_good_2op:
    AND     #$1F
    CMP     #$19
    BCC     .go_to_op2
    JMP     illegal_opcode
```

Defines:

      .check\_for\_good\_2op, never used.  
 Uses CURR\_OPCODE 208 and illegal\_opcode 161.

Then we load the 2op instruction table into SCRATCH2, leaving the A register with the offset into the table of the instruction to execute.

120c  $\langle \text{Handle 2op instructions 119a} \rangle + \equiv$  (211)  $\triangleleft 120b$   
       .go\_to\_op2:  
       PHA  
       STOW       routines\_table\_2op, SCRATCH2  
       PLA  
       JMP       .opcode\_table\_jump  
 Uses SCRATCH2 208, STOW 10, and routines\_table\_2op 112.

Bits	Type	Bytes in operand
00	Large constant (0x0000-0xFFFF)	2
01	Small constant (0x00-0xFF)	1
10	Variable address	1
11	None (ends operand list)	0

### 10.3.4 varop instructions

Handling a varop-type instruction (opcodes # $\$C0$ –# $\$FF$ ) is the most complicated. Interestingly, opcodes # $\$C0$ –# $\$DF$  map to 2op instructions (in their lower 5 bits).

The next byte is a map that determines the next operands. We look at two consecutive bits, starting from the most significant. The operand types are encoded as follows:

The values of the operands are stored consecutively starting in location OPERANDO.

```

121  <Handle varop instructions 121>≡ (116a) 122>
      LDX      #$00                ; operand number

      .get_next_operand:
      PHA                        ; save operand map
      TAY
      TXA
      PHA                        ; save operand number
      TYA
      AND      #$C0                ; check top 2 bits
      BNE      .is_01_10_11
      JSR      get_const_word      ; handle 00
      JMP      .store_operand

      .is_01_10_11:
      CMP      #$80
      BNE      .is_01_11
      JSR      get_var_content     ; handle 10
      JMP      .store_operand

      .is_01_11:
      CMP      #$40
      BNE      .is_11
      JSR      get_const_byte     ; handle 01
      JMP      .store_operand

      .is_11:
      PLA
      PLA

```

```

        JMP      .handle_varoperand_opcode ; handle 11 (ends operand list)

.store_operand:
    PLA
    TAX
    LDA      SCRATCH2
    STA      OPERANDO,X
    LDA      SCRATCH2+1
    STA      OPERANDO,X
    INX
    INX
    INC      OPERAND_COUNT
    PLA
                                ; shift operand map left 2 bits
    SEC
    ROL
    SEC
    ROL
    JMP      .get_next_operand

```

Uses OPERANDO 208, OPERAND\_COUNT 208, SCRATCH2 208, get\_const\_byte 123a, get\_const\_word 123b, and get\_var\_content 124.

Then we load the varop instruction table into SCRATCH2, leaving the A register with the offset into the table of the instruction to execute. However, we also check for illegal opcodes. Since opcodes #C0-#DF map to 2op instructions in their lower 5 bits, we simply hook into the 2op routine to do the opcode check and table jump.

Opcodes #EA-#FF are illegal.

```

122  <Handle varop instructions 121>+≡ (116a) <121
    .handle_varoperand_opcode:
        STOW    routines_table_var, SCRATCH2
        LDA     CURR_OPCODE
        CMP     #$E0
        BCS     .is_vararg_instr
        JMP     .check_for_good_2op

    .is_vararg_instr:
        SBC     #$E0 ; Allow only E0-E9.
        CMP     #$0A
        BCC     .opcode_table_jump
        JMP     illegal_opcode

```

Uses CURR\_OPCODE 208, SCRATCH2 208, STOW 10, illegal\_opcode 161, and routines\_table\_var 112.

## 10.4 Getting the instruction operands

The utility routine `get_const_byte` gets the next byte of Z-code and stores it as a zero-extended 16-bit word in `SCRATCH2`.

123a  $\langle \textit{Get const byte 123a} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

    get_const_byte:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      get_next_code_byte
        STA      SCRATCH2
        LDA      #$00
        STA      SCRATCH2+1
        RTS

```

Defines:

`get_const_byte`, used in chunks 117b, 119, and 121.  
 Uses `SCRATCH2` 208 and `get_next_code_byte` 39.

The utility routine `get_const_word` gets the next two bytes of Z-code and stores them as a 16-bit word in `SCRATCH2`. The word is stored big-endian in Z-code. The code in the routine is a little inefficient, since it uses the stack to shuffle bytes around, rather than storing the bytes directly in the right order.

123b  $\langle \textit{Get const word 123b} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

    get_const_word:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      get_next_code_byte
        PHA
        JSR      get_next_code_byte
        STA      SCRATCH2
        PLA
        STA      SCRATCH2+1
        RTS

```

Defines:

`get_const_word`, used in chunks 117a and 121.  
 Uses `SCRATCH2` 208 and `get_next_code_byte` 39.

The utility routine `get_var_content` gets the next byte of Z-code and interprets it as a Z-variable address, then retrieves the variable's 16-bit value and stores it in `SCRATCH2`.

Variable 00 always means the top of the Z-stack, and this will also pop the stack.

Variables 01-0F are “locals”, and stored as 2-byte big-endian numbers in the zero-page at `$9A-$B9` (the `LOCAL_ZVARS` area).

Variables 10-FF are “globals”, and are stored as 2-byte big-endian numbers in a location stored at `GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR`.

```

124  <Get var content 124>≡ (211)
      get_var_content:
      SUBROUTINE

      JSR      get_next_code_byte      ; A = get_next_code_byte<Z_PC>
      ORA      #$00                    ; if (!A) get_top_of_stack
      BEQ      get_top_of_stack

      get_nonstack_var:
      SUBROUTINE

      CMP      #$10                    ; if (A < #$10) {
      BCS      .compute_global_var_index
      SEC
      SBC      #$01                    ;   SCRATCH2 = LOCAL_ZVARS[A - 1]
      ASL
      TAX
      LDA      LOCAL_ZVARS,X
      STA      SCRATCH2+1
      INX
      LDA      LOCAL_ZVARS,X
      STA      SCRATCH2
      RTS
                                     ;   return
                                     ; }

      .compute_global_var_index:
      SEC                                     ; var_ptr = 2 * (A - #$10)
      SBC      #$10
      ASL
      STA      SCRATCH1
      LDA      #$00
      ROL
      STA      SCRATCH1+1

      .get_global_var_addr:
      CLC                                     ; var_ptr += GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR
      LDA      GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR

```

```

        ADC      SCRATCH1
        STA      SCRATCH1
        LDA      GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR+1
        ADC      SCRATCH1+1
        STA      SCRATCH1+1

.get_global_var_value:
        LDY      #$00                      ; SCRATCH2 = *var_ptr
        LDA      (SCRATCH1),Y
        STA      SCRATCH2+1
        INY
        LDA      (SCRATCH1),Y
        STA      SCRATCH2
        RTS                      ; return

.get_top_of_stack:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      pop                      ; SCRATCH2 = pop()
        RTS                      ; return

```

Defines:

`get_nonstack_var`, used in chunk 125.

`get_top_of_stack`, never used.

`get_var_content`, used in chunks 117c, 119, and 121.

Uses `GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR` 208, `LOCAL_ZVARS` 208, `SCRATCH1` 208, `SCRATCH2` 208, `Z_PC` 208,

`get_next_code_byte` 39, and `pop` 38.

There's another utility routine `var_get` which does the same thing, except the variable address is already stored in the A register.

```

125  <Get var content in A 125>≡ (211)
      var_get:
      SUBROUTINE

      ORA      #$00
      BEQ      pop_push
      JMP      get_nonstack_var

```

Defines:

`var_get`, used in chunks 71, 163, and 168a.

Uses `get_nonstack_var` 124 and `pop_push` 127.

The routine `store_var` stores `SCRATCH2` into the variable in the next code byte, while `store_var2` stores `SCRATCH2` into the variable in the `A` register. Since variable 0 is the stack, storing into variable 0 is equivalent to pushing onto the stack.

```

126  <Store var 126>≡ (211)
      store_var:
          SUBROUTINE

              LDA      SCRATCH2          ; A = get_next_code_byte()
              PHA
              LDA      SCRATCH2+1
              PHA
              JSR      get_next_code_byte
              TAX
              PLA
              STA      SCRATCH2+1
              PLA
              STA      SCRATCH2
              TXA

store_var2:
    SUBROUTINE

        ORA      #$00
        BNE      .nonstack
        JMP      push

.nonstack:
    CMP      #$10
    BCS      .global_var
    SEC
    SBC      #$01
    ASL
    TAX
    LDA      SCRATCH2+1
    STA      LOCAL_ZVARS,X
    INX
    LDA      SCRATCH2
    STA      LOCAL_ZVARS,X
    RTS

.global_var:
    SEC
    SBC      #$10
    ASL
    STA      SCRATCH1
    LDA      #$00
    ROL
    STA      SCRATCH1+1

```



```

CLC
LDA    GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR
ADC    SCRATCH1
STA    SCRATCH1
LDA    GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR+1
ADC    SCRATCH1+1
STA    SCRATCH1+1
LDY    #$00
LDA    SCRATCH2+1
STA    (SCRATCH1),Y
INY
LDA    SCRATCH2
STA    (SCRATCH1),Y
RTS

```

Defines:

store\_var, used in chunks 162a and 191.

Uses GLOBAL\_ZVARS\_ADDR 208, LOCAL\_ZVARS 208, SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH2 208, get\_next\_code\_byte 39, and push 37.

The var\_put routine stores the value in SCRATCH2 into the variable in the A register. Note that if the variable is 0, then it replaces the top value on the stack.

127     $\langle \text{Store to var A 127} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

var_put:
SUBROUTINE

ORA    #$00
BEQ    .pop_push
JMP    store_var2

.pop_push:
JSR    pop
JMP    push

.pop_push:
LDA    SCRATCH2
PHA
LDA    SCRATCH2+1
PHA
JSR    pop
PLA
STA    SCRATCH2+1
PLA
STA    SCRATCH2
JMP    push

```

Defines:

pop\_push, used in chunk 125.

var\_put, used in chunks 163a and 169b.

Uses SCRATCH2 208, pop 38, and push 37.

# Chapter 11

## Calls and returns

### 11.1 Call

The `call` instruction calls the routine at the packed address in operand 0. A call may have anywhere from 0 to 3 arguments, and a routine always has a return value. Note that calls to address 0 merely returns false (0).

The z-code byte after the operands gives the variable in which to store the return value from the call.

```
128  <Instruction call 128>≡ (211) 129a>
      instr_call:
          LDA    OPERANDO
          ORA    OPERANDO+1
          BNE    .push_frame
          STOW   #$0000, SCRATCH2
          JMP    store_and_next
```

Defines:

`instr_call`, used in chunk 112.

Uses `OPERANDO 208`, `SCRATCH2 208`, `STOW 10`, and `store_and_next 162a`.

Packed addresses are byte addresses divided by two.

The routine's arguments are stored in local variables (starting from variable 1). Such used local variables are saved before the call, and restored after the call.

As usual with calls, calls push a frame onto the stack, while returns pop a frame off the stack.

The frame consists of the frame's stack count, Z\_PC, and the frame's stack pointer.

```
129a  <Instruction call 128>+≡ (211) <128 129b>
      .push_frame:
      MOVB    FRAME_STACK_COUNT, SCRATCH2
      MOVB    Z_PC, SCRATCH2+1
      JSR     push
      MOVW    FRAME_Z_SP, SCRATCH2
      JSR     push
      MOVW    Z_PC+1, SCRATCH2
      JSR     push
      STOB    #$00, ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
```

Uses FRAME\_STACK\_COUNT 208, FRAME\_Z\_SP 208, MOVB 11b, MOVW 12a, SCRATCH2 208, STOB 11b, ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID 208, Z\_PC 208, and push 37.

Next, we unpack the call address and put it in Z\_PC.

```
129b  <Instruction call 128>+≡ (211) <129a 129c>
      LDA     OPERANDO
      ASL
      STA     Z_PC
      LDA     OPERANDO+1
      ROL
      STA     Z_PC+1
      LDA     #$00
      ROL
      STA     Z_PC+2
```

Uses OPERANDO 208 and Z\_PC 208.

The first byte in a routine is the number of local variables (0-15). We now retrieve it (and save it for later).

```
129c  <Instruction call 128>+≡ (211) <129b 130>
      JSR     get_next_code_byte    ; local_var_count = get_next_code_byte()
      PHA
      ORA     #$00                  ; Save local_var_count
      BEQ     .after_loop2
```

Uses get\_next\_code\_byte 39.

Now we push and initialize the local variables. The next words in the routine are the initial values of the local variables.

```

130  <Instruction call 128>+≡                                     (211) <129c 131a>
      LDX      #$00                                           ; X = 0

      .push_and_init_local_vars:
      PHA                                           ; Save local_var_count
      LDA      LOCAL_ZVARS,X                         ; Push LOCAL_ZVAR[X] onto the stack
      STA      SCRATCH2+1
      INX
      LDA      LOCAL_ZVARS,X
      STA      SCRATCH2
      DEX
      TXA
      PHA
      JSR      push

      JSR      get_next_code_byte      ; SCRATCH2 = next init val
      PHA
      JSR      get_next_code_byte
      STA      SCRATCH2
      PLA
      STA      SCRATCH2+1

      PLA                                           ; Restore local_var_count
      TAX
      LDA      SCRATCH2+1                         ; LOCAL_ZVARS[X] = SCRATCH2
      STA      LOCAL_ZVARS,X
      INX
      LDA      SCRATCH2
      STA      LOCAL_ZVARS,X
      INX                                           ; Increment X
      PLA                                           ; Decrement local_var_count
      SEC
      SBC      #$01
      BNE      .push_and_init_local_vars ; Loop until no more vars

```

Uses LOCAL\_ZVARS 208, SCRATCH2 208, get\_next\_code\_byte 39, and push 37.

Next, we load the local variables with the call arguments.

```

131a  <Instruction call 128>+≡ (211) <130 131b>
      .after_loop2:
          LDA    OPERAND_COUNT          ; count = OPERAND_COUNT - 1
          STA    SCRATCH3
          DEC    SCRATCH3
          BEQ    .done_init_local_vars ; if (!count) .done_init_local_vars

          STOB   #$00, SCRATCH1          ; operand = 0
          STOB   #$00, SCRATCH2          ; zvar = 0

      .loop:
          LDX    SCRATCH1                ; LOCAL_ZVARS[zvar] = OPERANDO[operand]
          LDA    OPERANDO+1,X
          LDX    SCRATCH2
          STA    LOCAL_ZVARS,X
          INC    SCRATCH2
          LDX    SCRATCH1
          LDA    OPERANDO,X
          LDX    SCRATCH2
          STA    LOCAL_ZVARS,X
          INC    SCRATCH2                ; ++zvar
          INC    SCRATCH1                ; ++operand
          INC    SCRATCH1
          DEC    SCRATCH3                ; --count
          BNE    .loop                  ; if (count) .loop

```

Uses LOCAL\_ZVARS 208, OPERANDO 208, OPERAND\_COUNT 208, SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH2 208, SCRATCH3 208, and STOB 11b.

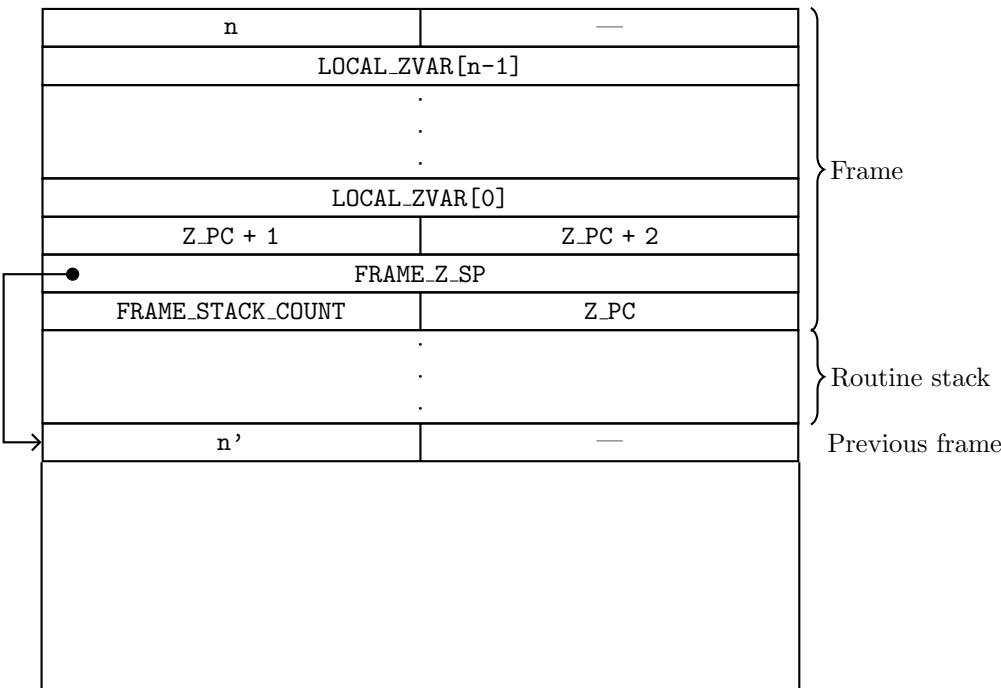
Finally, we add the local var count to the frame, update FRAME\_STACK\_COUNT and FRAME\_Z\_SP, and jump to the routine's first instruction.

```

131b  <Instruction call 128>+≡ (211) <131a>
      .done_init_local_vars:
          PULB   SCRATCH2                ; Restore local_var_count
          JSR    push                    ; Push local_var_count
          MOVB   STACK_COUNT, FRAME_STACK_COUNT
          MOVW   Z_SP, FRAME_Z_SP
          JMP    do_instruction

```

Uses FRAME\_STACK\_COUNT 208, FRAME\_Z\_SP 208, MOVB 11b, MOVW 12a, PULB 12c, SCRATCH2 208, STACK\_COUNT 208, Z\_SP 208, do\_instruction 115, and push 37.



11.2 Return

The `ret` instruction returns from a routine. It effectively undoes what `call` did. First, we set the stack pointer and count to the frame’s stack pointer and count.

```
132  <Instruction ret 132>≡ (211) 133a>
      instr_ret:
      SUBROUTINE

      MOVW    FRAME_Z.SP, Z.SP
      MOVB    FRAME_STACK_COUNT, STACK_COUNT
```

Defines:  
`instr_ret`, used in chunks 112, 186a, and 187a.  
Uses `FRAME_STACK_COUNT` 208, `FRAME_Z.SP` 208, `MOVB` 11b, `MOVW` 12a, `STACK_COUNT` 208,  
and `Z.SP` 208.

Next, we restore the locals. We first pop the number of locals off the stack, and if there were none, we can skip the whole local restore process.

```
133a  <Instruction ret 132>+≡ (211) <132 133b>
      JSR      pop
      LDA      SCRATCH2
      BEQ      .done_locals
Uses SCRATCH2 208 and pop 38.
```

We then set up the loop variables for restoring the locals.

```
133b  <Instruction ret 132>+≡ (211) <133a 133c>
      STOW     LOCAL_ZVARS-2, SCRATCH1    ; ptr = &LOCAL_ZVARS[-1]
      MOVW     SCRATCH2, SCRATCH3         ; count = STRATCH2
      ASL      ; ptr += 2 * count
      ADDA     SCRATCH1
Uses ADDA 14a, LOCAL_ZVARS 208, MOVW 11b, SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH2 208, SCRATCH3 208,
and STOW 10.
```

Now we pop the locals off the stack in reverse order.

```
133c  <Instruction ret 132>+≡ (211) <133b 133d>
      .loop:
      JSR      pop                ; SCRATCH2 = pop()
      LDY      #$01              ; *ptr = SCRATCH2
      LDA      SCRATCH2
      STA      (SCRATCH1),Y
      DEY
      LDA      SCRATCH2+1
      STA      (SCRATCH1),Y
      SUBB     SCRATCH1, #$02      ; ptr -= 2
      DEC      SCRATCH3           ; --count
      BNE      .loop
Uses SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH2 208, SCRATCH3 208, SUBB 16b, and pop 38.
```

Next, we restore Z\_PC and the frame stack pointer and count.

```
133d  <Instruction ret 132>+≡ (211) <133c 134>
      .done_locals:
      JSR      pop
      MOVW     SCRATCH2, Z_PC+1
      JSR      pop
      MOVW     SCRATCH2, FRAME_Z_SP
      JSR      pop
      MOVW     SCRATCH2+1, Z_PC
      MOVW     SCRATCH2, FRAME_STACK_COUNT
Uses FRAME_STACK_COUNT 208, FRAME_Z_SP 208, MOVW 11b, MOVW 12a, SCRATCH2 208, Z_PC 208,
and pop 38.
```

Finally, we store the return value.

```
134  <Instruction ret 132>+≡ (211) <133d
      STOB    #$00, ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
      MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
      JMP     store_and_next
Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 208, SCRATCH2 208, STOB 11b, ZCODE_PAGE_VALID 208,
and store_and_next 162a.
```



## Chapter 12

# Objects

### 12.1 Object table format

Objects are stored in an object table, and there are at most 255 of them. They are numbered from 1 to 255, and object 0 is the “nothing” object.

The object table contains 31 words (62 bytes) for property defaults, and then at most 255 objects, each containing 9 bytes.

The first 4 bytes of each object entry are 32 bits of attribute flags (offsets 0-3). Next is the parent object number (offset 4), the sibling object number (offset 5), and the child object number (offset 6). Finally, there are two bytes of properties (offsets 7 and 8).

### 12.2 Getting an object’s address

The `get_object_address` routine gets the address of the object number in the A register and puts it in `SCRATCH2`.

It does this by first setting `SCRATCH2` to 9 times the A register (since objects entries are 9 bytes long).

```
135  <Get object address 135>≡ (211) 136a>
      get_object_addr:
      SUBROUTINE

      STA    SCRATCH2
      LDA    #$00
```

```

STA    SCRATCH2+1
LDA    SCRATCH2
ASL    SCRATCH2
ROL    SCRATCH2+1
ASL    SCRATCH2
ROL    SCRATCH2+1
ASL    SCRATCH2
ROL    SCRATCH2+1
CLC
ADC    SCRATCH2
BCC    .continue
INC    SCRATCH2+1
CLC

```

.continue:

Defines:

get\_object\_addr, used in chunks 137, 139–41, 143, 182b, 191, 193, 199, and 200.  
 Uses SCRATCH2 208.

Next, we add FIRST\_OBJECT\_OFFSET (53) to SCRATCH2. This skips the 31 words of property defaults, which would be 62 bytes, but since object numbers start from 1, the first object is at 53+9=62 bytes.

```

136a  <Get object address 135>+≡ (211) <135 136b>
      ADC    #FIRST_OBJECT_OFFSET
      STA    SCRATCH2
      BCC    .continue2
      INC    SCRATCH2+1

```

.continue2:

Uses FIRST\_OBJECT\_OFFSET 210a and SCRATCH2 208.

Finally, we get the address of the object table stored in the header and add it to SCRATCH2. The resulting address is thus in SCRATCH2.

```

136b  <Get object address 135>+≡ (211) <136a
      LDY    #HEADER_OBJECT_TABLE_ADDR_OFFSET-1
      LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
      CLC
      ADC    SCRATCH2
      STA    SCRATCH2
      DEY
      LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
      ADC    SCRATCH2+1
      ADC    Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
      STA    SCRATCH2+1
      RTS

```

Uses HEADER\_OBJECT\_TABLE\_ADDR\_OFFSET 210a and SCRATCH2 208.

## 12.3 Removing an object

The `remove_obj` routine removes the object number in `OPERANDO` from the object tree. This detaches the object from its parent, but the object retains its children.

Recall that an object is a node in a linked list. Each node contains a pointer to its parent, a pointer to its sibling (the next child of the parent), and a pointer to its first child. The null pointer is zero.

First, we get the object's address, and then get its parent pointer. If the parent pointer is null, it means the object is already detached, so we return.

```
137a  <Remove object 137a>≡ (211) 137b>
      remove_obj:
      SUBROUTINE

      LDA     OPERANDO          ; obj_ptr = get_object_addr<obj_num>
      JSR     get_object_addr
      LDY     #OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET ; A = obj_ptr->parent
      LDA     (SCRATCH2),Y
      BNE     .continue        ; if (!A) return
      RTS
```

.continue:

Defines:

`remove_obj`, used in chunks 200 and 202a.

Uses `OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET` 210a, `OPERANDO` 208, `SCRATCH2` 208, and `get_object_addr` 135.

Next, we save the object's address on the stack.

```
137b  <Remove object 137a>+≡ (211) <137a 137c>
      TAX
      LDA     SCRATCH2          ; save obj_ptr
      PHA
      LDA     SCRATCH2+1
      PHA
      TXA
```

Uses `SCRATCH2` 208.

Next, we get the parent's first child pointer.

```
137c  <Remove object 137a>+≡ (211) <137b 138a>
      JSR     get_object_addr    ; parent_ptr = get_object_addr<A>
      LDY     #OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET ; child_num = parent_ptr->child
      LDA     (SCRATCH2),Y
```

Uses `OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET` 210a, `SCRATCH2` 208, and `get_object_addr` 135.

If the first child pointer isn't the object we want to detach, then we will need to traverse the children list to find it.

```
138a  <Remove object 137a>+≡ (211) <137c 138b>
      CMP      OPERANDO          ; if (child_num != obj_num) loop
      BNE      .loop
      Uses OPERANDO 208.
```

But otherwise, we get the object's sibling and replace the parent's first child with it.

```
138b  <Remove object 137a>+≡ (211) <138a 139a>
      PLA                                ; restore obj_ptr
      STA      SCRATCH1+1
      PLA
      STA      SCRATCH1
      LDA      SCRATCH1
      PHA
      LDA      SCRATCH1+1
      PHA
      LDY      #OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET ; A = obj_ptr->next
      LDA      (SCRATCH1),Y
      LDY      #OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET  ; parent_ptr->child = A
      STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
      JMP      .detach
      Uses OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET 210a, OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET 210a, SCRATCH1 208,
      and SCRATCH2 208.
```

Detaching the object means we null out the parent pointer of the object. Then we can return.

```
138c  <Detach object 138c>≡ (139b)
      .detach:
      PLA                                ; restore obj_ptr
      STA      SCRATCH2+1
      PLA
      STA      SCRATCH2
      LDY      #OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET ; obj_ptr->parent = 0
      LDA      #$00
      STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
      INY
      STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
      RTS
      Uses OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET 210a and SCRATCH2 208.
```

Looping over the children just involves traversing the children list and checking if the current child pointer is equal to the object we want to detach. For a self-consistent table, an object's parent must contain the object as a child, and so it would have to be found at some point.

```

139a  <Remove object 137a>+≡ (211) <138b 139b>
      .loop:
        JSR      get_object_addr      ; child_ptr = get_object_addr<child_num>
        LDY      #OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET ; child_num = child_ptr->next
        LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        CMP      OPERANDO              ; if (child_num != obj_num) loop
        BNE      .loop

```

Uses OBJECT\_SIBLING\_OFFSET 210a, OPERANDO 208, SCRATCH2 208, and get\_object\_addr 135.

SCRATCH2 now contains the address of the child whose sibling is the object we want to detach. So, we set SCRATCH1 to the object we want to detach, get its sibling, and set it as the sibling of the SCRATCH2 object. Then we can detach the object.

Diagram this.

```

139b  <Remove object 137a>+≡ (211) <139a>
      PLA
      STA      SCRATCH1+1          ; restore obj_ptr
      PLA
      STA      SCRATCH1
      LDA      SCRATCH1
      PHA
      LDA      SCRATCH1+1
      PHA
      LDA      (SCRATCH1),Y        ; child_ptr->next = obj_ptr->next
      STA      (SCRATCH2),Y

```

<Detach object 138c>

Uses SCRATCH1 208 and SCRATCH2 208.

## 12.4 Object strings

The `print_obj_in_A` routine prints the short name of the object in the A register. The short name of an object is stored at the beginning of the object's properties as a length-prefixed z-encoded string. The length is actually the number of words, not bytes or characters, and is a single byte. This means that the number of bytes in the string is at most  $255 \times 2 = 510$ . And since z-encoded characters are encoded as three characters for every two bytes, the number of characters in a short name is at most  $255 \times 3 = 765$ .

140 *<Print object in A 140>*≡ (211)

```

print_obj_in_A:
    JSR    get_object_addr      ; obj_ptr = get_object_addr<A>
    LDY    #OBJECT_PROPS_OFFSET ; props_ptr = obj_ptr->props
    LDA    (SCRATCH2),Y
    STA    SCRATCH1+1
    INY
    LDA    (SCRATCH2),Y
    STA    SCRATCH1
    MOVW   SCRATCH1, SCRATCH2
    INCW   SCRATCH2             ; ++props_ptr
    JSR    load_address          ; Z_PC2 = props_ptr
    JMP    print_zstring        ; print_zstring<Z_PC2>

```

Defines:

`print_obj_in_A`, used in chunks 71 and 189b.

Uses `INCW` 13b, `MOVW` 12a, `OBJECT_PROPS_OFFSET` 210a, `SCRATCH1` 208, `SCRATCH2` 208, `get_object_addr` 135, `load_address` 47b, and `print_zstring` 64.

## 12.5 Object attributes

The attributes of an object are stored in the first 4 bytes of the object in the object table. These were also called “flags” in the original Infocom source code, and as such, attributes are binary flags. The order of attributes in these bytes is such that attribute 0 is in bit 7 of byte 0, and attribute 31 is in bit 0 of byte 3.

The `attr_ptr_and_mask` routine is used in attribute instructions to get the pointer to the attributes for the object in `OPERANDO` and mask for the attribute number in `OPERAND1`.

The result from this routine is that `SCRATCH1` contains the relevant attribute word, `SCRATCH3` contains the relevant attribute mask, and `SCRATCH2` contains the address of the attribute word.

We first set `SCRATCH2` to point to the 2-byte word containing the attribute.

```

141  <Get attribute pointer and mask 141>≡ (211) 142a>
    attr_ptr_and_mask:
        LDA     OPERANDO          ; SCRATCH2 = get_object_addr<obj_num>
        JSR     get_object_addr
        LDA     OPERAND1          ; if (attr_num >= #$10) {
        CMP     #$10              ; SCRATCH2 += 2; attr_num -= #$10
        BCC     .continue2        ; }
        SEC
        SBC     #$10
        INCW    SCRATCH2
        INCW    SCRATCH2

    .continue2:
        STA     SCRATCH1          ; SCRATCH1 = attr_num

```

Defines:

`attr_ptr_and_mask`, used in chunks 184b, 190, and 202b.

Uses `INCW` 13b, `OPERANDO` 208, `OPERAND1` 208, `SCRATCH1` 208, `SCRATCH2` 208,  
and `get_object_addr` 135.

Next, we set SCRATCH3 to #\$0001 and then bit-shift left by 15 minus the attribute (mod 16) that we want. Thus, attribute 0 and attribute 16 will result in #\$8000.

142a     $\langle \text{Get attribute pointer and mask } 141 \rangle + \equiv$     (211)  $\langle 141 \ 142b \rangle$

```

        STOW    #$0001, SCRATCH3
        LDA     #$0F
        SEC
        SBC     SCRATCH1
        TAX

        .shift_loop:
        BEQ     .done_shift
        ASL     SCRATCH3
        ROL     SCRATCH3+1
        DEX
        JMP     .shift_loop

```

.done\_shift:

Uses SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH3 208, and STOW 10.

Finally, we load the attribute word into SCRATCH1.

142b     $\langle \text{Get attribute pointer and mask } 141 \rangle + \equiv$     (211)  $\langle 142a \rangle$

```

        LDY     #$00
        LDA     (SCRATCH2),Y
        STA     SCRATCH1+1
        INY
        LDA     (SCRATCH2),Y
        STA     SCRATCH1
        RTS

```

Uses SCRATCH1 208 and SCRATCH2 208.



## 12.6 Object properties

The pointer to the properties of an object is stored in the last 2 bytes of the object in the object table. The first “property” is actually the object’s short name, as detailed in [Object strings](#).

Each property starts with a size byte, which is encoded with the lower 5 bits being the property number, and the upper 3 bits being the data size minus 1 (so 0 means 1 byte and 7 means 8 bytes). The property numbers are ordered from lowest to highest for more efficient searching.

The `get_property_ptr` routine gets the pointer to the property table for the object in `OPERANDO` and stores it in `SCRATCH2`. In addition, it returns the size of the first “property” (the short name) in the Y register, so that `SCRATCH2+Y` would point to the first numbered property.

```

143  <Get property pointer 143>≡ (211)
      get_property_ptr:
          SUBROUTINE

              LDA      OPERANDO
              JSR      get_object_addr
              LDY      #OBJECT_PROPS_OFFSET
              LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
              STA      SCRATCH1+1
              INY
              LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
              STA      SCRATCH1
              ADDW      SCRATCH1, Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
              LDY      #$00
              LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
              ASL
              TAY
              INY
              RTS

```

Defines:

`get_property_ptr`, used in chunks [192](#), [194](#), [197](#), and [201](#).

Uses `ADDW` [15c](#), `OBJECT_PROPS_OFFSET` [210a](#), `OPERANDO` [208](#), `SCRATCH1` [208](#), `SCRATCH2` [208](#), and `get_object_addr` [135](#).

The `get_property_num` routine gets the property number being currently pointed to.

144a     $\langle \textit{Get property number 144a} \rangle \equiv$  (211)  
         `get_property_num:`  
         SUBROUTINE

```
        LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        AND      #$1F
        RTS
```

Defines:

`get_property_num`, used in chunks 192, 194, 197, and 201.  
Uses `SCRATCH2` 208.

The `get_property_len` routine gets the length of the property being currently pointed to, minus one.

144b     $\langle \textit{Get property length 144b} \rangle \equiv$  (211)  
         `get_property_len:`  
         SUBROUTINE

```
        LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        ROR
        ROR
        ROR
        ROR
        ROR
        AND      #$07
        RTS
```

Defines:

`get_property_len`, used in chunks 145, 196, 198, and 201.  
Uses `SCRATCH2` 208.

The `next_property` routine updates the Y register to point to the next property in the property table.

```
145  ⟨Next property 145⟩≡ (211)
      next_property:
      SUBROUTINE

      JSR      get_property_len
      TAX

      .loop:
      INY
      DEX
      BPL      .loop
      INY
      RTS
```

Defines:

`next_property`, used in chunks 192, 194, 197, and 201.  
Uses `get_property_len` 144b.

## Chapter 13

# Saving and restoring the game

### 13.0.1 Save prompts for the user

The first part of saving the game asks the user to insert a save diskette, along with the save number (0-7), the drive slot (1-7), and the drive number (1 or 2) containing the save disk.

We first prompt the user to insert the disk:

```
146  <Insert save diskette 146>≡ (211) 147a>
      please_insert_save_diskette:
      SUBROUTINE

      JSR      home
      JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
      JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
      STOW     sPleaseInsert, SCRATCH2
      LDX      #28
      JSR      print_ascii_string
      JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
```

Defines:

    please\_insert\_save\_diskette, used in chunks 152a and 155b.

Uses SCRATCH2 208, STOW 10, dump\_buffer\_with\_more 56, home 50, print\_ascii\_string 61b,  
and sPleaseInsert 147b.

Next, we prompt the user for what position they want to save into. The number must be between 0 and 7, otherwise the user is asked again.

```
147a  <Insert save diskette 146>+≡ (211) <146 149a>
      .get_position_from_user:
          LDA      #(sPositionPrompt-sSlotPrompt)
          STA      prompt_offset
          JSR      get_prompted_number_from_user
          CMP      #'0
          BCC      .get_position_from_user
          CMP      #'8
          BCS      .get_position_from_user
          STA      save_position
          JSR      buffer_char
```

Uses buffer\_char 59, prompt\_offset 147b, sPositionPrompt 147b, sSlotPrompt 147b, and save\_position 147b.

```
147b  <Save diskette strings 147b>≡ (211)
      sPleaseInsert:
          DC      "PLEASE INSERT SAVE DISKETTE,"
      prompt_offset:
          DC      0
      sSlotPrompt:
          DC      "SLOT      (1-7):"
      save_slot:
          DC      '6
      sDrivePrompt:
          DC      "DRIVE      (1-2):"
      save_drive:
          DC      '2
      sPositionPrompt:
          DC      "POSITION (0-7):"
      save_position:
          DC      '0
      sDefault:
          DC      "DEFAULT = "
      sReturnToBegin:
          DC      "--- PRESS 'RETURN' KEY TO BEGIN ---"
```

Defines:

```
prompt_offset, used in chunks 147-49.
sDrivePrompt, used in chunk 149b.
sPleaseInsert, used in chunk 146.
sPositionPrompt, used in chunk 147a.
sReturnToBegin, used in chunk 150a.
sSlotPrompt, used in chunks 147-49.
save_drive, used in chunk 149b.
save_position, used in chunks 147a and 150b.
save_slot, used in chunks 148 and 149a.
```

The `get_prompted_number_from_user` routine takes an offset from the `sSlotPrompt` symbol in `prompt_offset`. This offset must point to a 15-character prompt. The routine will print the prompt along with its default value (the byte after the prompt), get a single digit from the user, and then store that back into the default value.

148 *⟨Get prompted number from user 148⟩*≡ (211)  
`get_prompted_number_from_user:`  
`SUBROUTINE`

```

JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
STOW     sSlotPrompt, SCRATCH2      ; print prompt
ADDB     SCRATCH2, prompt_offset
LDX      #15
JSR      print_ascii_string
JSR      dump_buffer_line
LDA      #25
STA      CH
LDA      #$3F                      ; set inverse
STA      INVFLG
STOW     sDefault, SCRATCH2        ; print "DEFAULT = "
LDX      #10
JSR      cout_string
STOW     save_slot, SCRATCH2        ; print default value
ADDB     SCRATCH2, prompt_offset
LDX      #1
JSR      cout_string
LDA      #$FF                      ; clear inverse
STA      INVFLG
JSR      RDKEY                      ; A = read key
PHA
LDA      #25
STA      CH
JSR      CLREOL                    ; clear line
PLA
CMP      #$8D                      ; newline?
BNE      .end
LDY      prompt_offset              ; store result
LDA      save_slot,Y

.end:
AND      #$7F
RTS

```

Uses `ADDB 15a`, `CH 207`, `CLREOL 207`, `INVFLG 207`, `RDKEY 207`, `SCRATCH2 208`, `STOW 10`, `cout_string 49`, `dump_buffer_line 55`, `dump_buffer_with_more 56`, `print_ascii_string 61b`, `prompt_offset 147b`, `sSlotPrompt 147b`, and `save_slot 147b`.

Getting back to the save procedure, we then ask the user for the drive slot, which must be between 1 and 7. We also store the slot times 16 in `iob.slot_times_16`.

```

149a  <Insert save diskette 146>+≡ (211) <147a 149b>
      .get_slot_from_user:
          LDA      #(sSlotPrompt - sSlotPrompt)
          STA      prompt_offset
          JSR      get_prompted_number_from_user
          CMP      #'1
          BCC      .get_slot_from_user
          CMP      #'8
          BCS      .get_slot_from_user
          TAX
          AND      #$07
          ASL
          ASL
          ASL
          ASL
          STA      iob.slot_times_16
          TXA
          STA      save_slot
          JSR      buffer_char

```

Uses `buffer_char` 59, `iob` 108, `prompt_offset` 147b, `sSlotPrompt` 147b, and `save_slot` 147b.

Next, we ask the user for the drive number, which must be 1 or 2. This value is stored in `iob.drive`.

```

149b  <Insert save diskette 146>+≡ (211) <149a 150a>
      .get_drive_from_user:
          LDA      #(sDrivePrompt - sSlotPrompt)
          STA      prompt_offset
          JSR      get_prompted_number_from_user
          CMP      #'1
          BCC      .get_drive_from_user
          CMP      #'3
          BCS      .get_drive_from_user
          TAX
          AND      #$03
          STA      iob.drive
          TXA
          STA      save_drive
          JSR      buffer_char

```

Uses `buffer_char` 59, `iob` 108, `prompt_offset` 147b, `sDrivePrompt` 147b, `sSlotPrompt` 147b, and `save_drive` 147b.

Next, we prompt the user to start.

```

150a  <Insert save diskette 146>+≡ (211) <149b 150b>
      .press_return_key_to_begin:
          JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
          STOW     sReturnToBegin, SCRATCH2
          LDX      #35
          JSR      print_ascii_string
          JSR      dump_buffer_line
          JSR      RDKEY
          CMP      #$8D
          BNE      .press_return_key_to_begin

```

Uses RDKEY 207, SCRATCH2 208, STOW 10, dump\_buffer\_line 55, dump\_buffer\_with\_more 56, print\_ascii\_string 61b, and sReturnToBegin 147b.

SCRATCH1 is going to contain  $64 * \text{save\_position} - 1$  at the end of the routine. This is the sector number (minus one) where the save data will be written. Thus, a save game takes 64 sectors.

```

150b  <Insert save diskette 146>+≡ (211) <150a
      LDA      #$FF
      STA      SCRATCH1
      STA      SCRATCH1+1
      LDA      save_position
      AND      #$07
      BEQ      .end
      TAY

      .loop:
          ADDB   SCRATCH1, #64
          DEY
          BNE    .loop

      .end:
          JSR    dump_buffer_with_more
          RTS

```

Uses ADDB 15a, SCRATCH1 208, dump\_buffer\_with\_more 56, and save\_position 147b.



When the save is eventually complete, the user is prompted to reinsert the game diskette.

```

151  <Reinsert game diskette 151>≡ (211)
      sReinsertGameDiskette:
          DC      "PLEASE RE-INSERT GAME DISKETTE,"
      sPressReturnToContinue:
          DC      "--- PRESS 'RETURN' KEY TO CONTINUE ---"

      please_reinsert_game_diskette:
          SUBROUTINE

          LDA      iob.slot_times_16
          CMP      #$60
          BNE      .set_slot6_drive1
          LDA      iob.drive
          CMP      #$01
          BNE      .set_slot6_drive1
          JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
          STOW     sReinsertGameDiskette, SCRATCH2
          LDX      #31
          JSR      print_ascii_string

      .await_return_key:
          JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
          STOW     sPressReturnToContinue, SCRATCH2
          LDX      #38
          JSR      print_ascii_string
          JSR      dump_buffer_line
          JSR      RDKEY
          CMP      #$8D
          BNE      .await_return_key
          JSR      dump_buffer_with_more

      .set_slot6_drive1:
          LDA      #$60
          STA      iob.slot_times_16
          LDA      #$01
          STA      iob.drive
          RTS

```

Defines:

please\_reinsert\_game\_diskette, used in chunks 154c, 155a, and 158.

sPressReturnToContinue, never used.

sReinsertGameDiskette, never used.

Uses RDKEY 207, SCRATCH2 208, STOW 10, dump\_buffer\_line 55, dump\_buffer\_with\_more 56, iob 108, and print\_ascii\_string 61b.

### 13.0.2 Saving the game state

When the virtual machine is instructed to save, the `instr_save` routine is executed.

The instruction first calls the `please_insert_save_diskette` routine to prompt the user to insert a save diskette and set the disk parameters.

152a     $\langle \text{Instruction save 152a} \rangle \equiv$  (211) 152b  $\triangleright$   
       `instr_save:`  
       SUBROUTINE

      JSR       `please_insert_save_diskette`

Defines:

`instr_save`, used in chunk 112.

Uses `please_insert_save_diskette` 146.

Next, we store the z-machine version number to the first byte of the `BUFF_AREA`. We maintain a pointer into the buffer in the X register.

152b     $\langle \text{Instruction save 152a} \rangle + \equiv$  (211)  $\triangleleft$  152a 152c  $\triangleright$   
       LDX       `#$00`  
       LDY       `#$00`  
       LDA       `(Z_HEADER_ADDR), Y`  
       STA       `BUFF_AREA, X`  
       INX

Uses `BUFF_AREA` 208.

Next, we copy the 3 bytes of `Z_PC` to the buffer. This is actually done in reverse order.

152c     $\langle \text{Instruction save 152a} \rangle + \equiv$  (211)  $\triangleleft$  152b 153b  $\triangleright$   
       STOW      `#Z_PC, SCRATCH2`  
       LDY       `#$03`  
       JSR       `copy_data_to_buff`

Uses `SCRATCH2` 208, `STOW 10`, `Z_PC` 208, and `copy_data_to_buff` 153a.

The `copy_data_to_buff` routine copies the number of bytes in the Y register from the address in `SCRATCH2` to the buffer, updating X as the pointer into the buffer.

153a     $\langle \textit{Copy data to buff 153a} \rangle \equiv$  (211)  
          `copy_data_to_buff:`  
             SUBROUTINE

```

DEY
LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
STA      BUFF_AREA,X
INX
CPY      #$00
BNE      copy_data_to_buff
RTS

```

Defines:

`copy_data_to_buff`, used in chunks 152-54.

Uses `BUFF_AREA` 208 and `SCRATCH2` 208.

We copy the 30 bytes of the `LOCAL_ZVARS` to the buffer, then 6 bytes for the stack state starting from `STACK_COUNT`. The collected buffer is then written to the first save sector on disk.

153b     $\langle \textit{Instruction save 152a} \rangle + \equiv$  (211)  $\langle$  152c 154a  $\rangle$   
          `STOW        #LOCAL_ZVARS, SCRATCH2`  
          `LDY        #30`  
          `JSR        copy_data_to_buff`  
  
          `STOW        #STACK_COUNT, SCRATCH2`  
          `LDY        #6`  
          `JSR        copy_data_to_buff`

```

JSR      write_next_sector
BCS      .fail

```

Uses `LOCAL_ZVARS` 208, `SCRATCH2` 208, `STACK_COUNT` 208, `STOW` 10, `copy_data_to_buff` 153a, and `write_next_sector` 111.

The second sector written contains 256 bytes starting from `#$0280`, and the third sector contains 256 bytes starting from `#$0380`.

```
154a  <Instruction save 152a>+≡ (211) <153b 154b>
        LDX      #$00
        STOW     #$0280, SCRATCH2
        LDY      #$00
        JSR      copy_data_to_buff

        JSR      write_next_sector
        BCS      .fail

        LDX      #$00
        STOW     #$0380, SCRATCH2
        LDY      #$68
        JSR      copy_data_to_buff

        JSR      write_next_sector
        BCS      .fail
```

Uses `SCRATCH2 208`, `STOW 10`, `copy_data_to_buff 153a`, and `write_next_sector 111`.

Next, we write the game memory starting from `Z_HEADER_ADDR` all the way up to the base of static memory given by the header.

```
154b  <Instruction save 152a>+≡ (211) <154a 154c>
        MOVW     Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
        LDY      #HEADER_STATIC_MEM_BASE
        LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        STA      SCRATCH3                ; big-endian!
        INC      SCRATCH3

        .loop:
        JSR      inc_sector_and_write
        BCS      .fail
        INC      SCRATCH2+1
        DEC      SCRATCH3
        BNE      .loop
        JSR      inc_sector_and_write
        BCS      .fail
```

Uses `HEADER_STATIC_MEM_BASE 210a`, `MOVW 12a`, `SCRATCH2 208`, `SCRATCH3 208`, and `inc_sector_and_write 111`.

Finally, we ask the user to reinsert the game diskette, and we're done. The instruction branches, assuming success.

```
154c  <Instruction save 152a>+≡ (211) <154b 155a>
        JSR      please_reinsert_game_diskette
        JMP      branch
```

Uses `branch 164a` and `please_reinsert_game_diskette 151`.

On failure, the instruction also asks the user to reinsert the game diskette, but branches assuming failure.

```
155a  <Instruction save 152a>+≡ (211) <154c>
      .fail:
          JSR      please_reinsert_game_diskette
          JMP      negated_branch
      Uses negated_branch 164a and please_reinsert_game_diskette 151.
```

### 13.0.3 Restoring the game state

When the virtual machine is instructed to restore, the `instr_restore` routine is executed. The instruction starts by asking the user to insert the save diskette, and sets up the disk parameters.

```
155b  <Instruction restore 155b>≡ (211) 155c>
      instr_restore:
          SUBROUTINE

          JSR      please_insert_save_diskette
      Defines:
          instr_restore, used in chunk 112.
      Uses please_insert_save_diskette 146.
```

The next step is to read the first sector and check the z-machine version number to make sure it's the same as the currently executing z-machine version. Otherwise the instruction fails.

```
155c  <Instruction restore 155b>+≡ (211) <155b 156a>
      JSR      read_next_sector
      BCC      .continue
      JMP      .fail

      .continue:
          LDX      #$00
          LDY      #$00
          LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          CMP      BUFF_AREA,X
          BEQ      .continue2
          JMP      .fail
      Uses BUFF_AREA 208 and read_next_sector 110.
```

We also save the current game flags in the header at byte #11.

```
156a  <Instruction restore 155b>+≡ (211) <155c 156b>
      .continue2:
          LDY    #11                ; Game flags.
          LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          STA    SIGN_BIT
```

We then restore the Z\_PC, local variables, and stack state from the same sector.

```
156b  <Instruction restore 155b>+≡ (211) <156a 157a>
      INX
      STOW     #Z_PC, SCRATCH2
      LDY     #3
      JSR     copy_data_from_buff
      LDA     #$00
      STA     ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
      STOW     #LOCAL_ZVARS, SCRATCH2
      LDY     #30
      JSR     copy_data_from_buff
      STOW     #STACK_COUNT, SCRATCH2
      LDY     #6
      JSR     copy_data_from_buff
```

Uses LOCAL\_ZVARS 208, SCRATCH2 208, STACK\_COUNT 208, STOW 10, ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID 208, Z\_PC 208, and copy\_data\_from\_buff 156c.

The copy\_data\_from\_buff routine copies the number of bytes in the Y register from BUFF\_AREA to the address in SCRATCH2, updating X as the pointer into the buffer.

```
156c  <Copy data from buff 156c>≡ (211)
      copy_data_from_buff:
          SUBROUTINE

          DEY
          LDA     BUFF_AREA,X
          STA     (SCRATCH2),Y
          INX
          CPY     #$00
          BNE     copy_data_from_buff
          RTS
```

Defines:

copy\_data\_from\_buff, used in chunks 156b and 157a.

Uses BUFF\_AREA 208 and SCRATCH2 208.

Next we restore 256 bytes starting from #0280 from the second sector, and 256 bytes starting from #0380 from the third sector.

```
157a  <Instruction restore 155b>+≡ (211) <156b 157b>
      JSR      read_next_sector
      BCS      .fail
      LDX      #$00
      STOW     #$0280, SCRATCH2
      LDY      #$00
      JSR      copy_data_from_buff
      JSR      read_next_sector
      BCS      .fail
      LDX      #$00
      STOW     #$0380, SCRATCH2
      LDY      #$68
      JSR      copy_data_from_buff
```

Uses SCRATCH2 208, STOW 10, copy\_data\_from\_buff 156c, and read\_next\_sector 110.

Next, we restore the game memory starting from Z\_HEADER\_ADDR all the way up to the base of static memory given by the header.

```
157b  <Instruction restore 155b>+≡ (211) <157a 157c>
      MOVW     Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
      LDY      #$0E
      LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
      STA      SCRATCH3                ; big-endian!
      INC      SCRATCH3

      .loop:
      JSR      inc_sector_and_read
      BCS      .fail
      INC      SCRATCH2+1
      DEC      SCRATCH3
      BNE      .loop
```

Uses MOVW 12a, SCRATCH2 208, SCRATCH3 208, and inc\_sector\_and\_read 110.

Then we restore the game flags in the header at byte #11 from before the actual restore.

```
157c  <Instruction restore 155b>+≡ (211) <157b 158a>
      LDA      SIGN_BIT
      LDY      #$11
      STA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
```

Finally, we ask the user to reinsert the game diskette, and we're done. The instruction branches, assuming success.

```
158a  <Instruction restore 155b>+≡ (211) <157c 158b>
      JSR      please_reinsert_game_diskette
      JMP      branch
Uses branch 164a and please_reinsert_game_diskette 151.
```

On failure, the instruction also asks the user to reinsert the game diskette, but branches assuming failure.

```
158b  <Instruction restore 155b>+≡ (211) <158a
      .fail:
      JSR      please_reinsert_game_diskette
      JMP      negated_branch
Uses negated_branch 164a and please_reinsert_game_diskette 151.
```



## Chapter 14

# Instructions

After an instruction finishes, it must jump to `do_instruction` in order to execute the next instruction.

Note that return values from functions are always stored in `OPERANDO`.

Data movement instructions	
<code>load</code>	Loads a variable into a variable
<code>loadb</code>	Loads a byte from a byte array into a variable
<code>loadw</code>	Loads a word from a word array into a variable
<code>store</code>	Stores a value into a variable
<code>storeb</code>	Stores a byte into a byte array
<code>storew</code>	Stores a word into a word array
Stack instructions	
<code>pop</code>	Throws away the top item from the stack
<code>pull</code>	Pulls a value from the stack into a variable
<code>push</code>	Pushes a value onto the stack
Decrement/increment instructions	
<code>dec</code>	Decrements a variable
<code>inc</code>	Increments a variable
Arithmetic instructions	
<code>add</code>	Adds two signed 16-bit values, storing to a variable
<code>div</code>	Divides two signed 16-bit values, storing to a variable
<code>mod</code>	Modulus of two signed 16-bit values, storing to a variable
<code>mul</code>	Multiplies two signed 16-bit values, storing to a variable
<code>random</code>	Stores a random number to a variable

sub	Subtracts two signed 16-bit values, storing to a variable
-----	---

---

Logical instructions	
and	Bitwise ANDs two 16-bit values, storing to a variable
not	Bitwise NOTs two 16-bit values, storing to a variable
or	Bitwise ORs two 16-bit values, storing to a variable

---

Conditional branch instructions	
dec_chk	Decrements a variable then branches if less than value
inc_chk	Increments a variable then branches if greater than value
je	Branches if value is equal to any subsequent operand
jg	Branches if value is (signed) greater than second operand
jin	Branches if object is a direct child of second operand object
j1	Branches if value is (signed) less than second operand
jz	Branches if value is equal to zero
test	Branches if all set bits in first operand are set in second operand
test_attr	Branches if object has attribute in second operand set

---

Jump and subroutine instructions	
call	Calls a subroutine
jump	Jumps unconditionally
print_ret	Prints a string and returns true
ret	Returns a value
ret_popped	Returns the popped value from the stack
rfalse	Returns false
rtrue	Returns true

---

Print instructions	
new_line	Prints a newline
print	Prints the immediate string
print_addr	Prints the string at an address
print_char	Prints the immediate character
print_num	Prints the signed number
print_obj	Prints the object's short name
print_paddr	Prints the string at a packed address

---

Object instructions	
clear_attr	Clears an object's attribute
get_child	Stores the object's first child into a variable
get_next_prop	Stores the object's property number after the given property number into a variable
get_parent	Stores the object's parent into a variable
get_prop	Stores the value of the object's property into a variable
get_prop_addr	Stores the address of the object's property into a variable
get_prop_len	Stores the byte length of the object's property into a variable
get_sibling	Stores the next sibling of the object into a variable
insert_obj	Reparents the object to the destination object
put_prop	Stores the value into the object's property

---

<code>remove_obj</code>	Detaches the object from its parent
<code>set_attr</code>	Sets an object's attribute

---

#### Other instructions

---

<code>nop</code>	Does nothing
<code>restart</code>	Restarts the game
<code>restore</code>	Loads a saved game
<code>quit</code>	Quits the game
<code>save</code>	Saves the game
<code>sread</code>	Reads from the keyboard

---

## 14.1 Instruction utilities

There are a few utilities that are used in common by instructions.

`illegal_opcode` hits a BRK instruction.

**161**     $\langle \textit{Instruction illegal opcode 161} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

`illegal_opcode:`  
SUBROUTINE

JSR        `brk`

Defines:

`illegal_opcode`, used in chunks **112**, **116b**, **118a**, **120b**, and **122**.

Uses `brk 33c`.

The `store_zero_and_next` routine stores the value 0 into the variable in the next byte, while `store_A_and_next` stores the value in the A register into the variable in the next byte. Finally, `store_and_next` stores the value in SCRATCH2 into the variable in the next byte.

162a  $\langle$ Store and go to next instruction 162a $\rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

store_zero_and_next:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA    #$00

store_A_and_next:
    SUBROUTINE

    STA    SCRATCH2
    LDA    #$00
    STA    SCRATCH2+1

store_and_next:
    SUBROUTINE

    JSR    store_var
    JMP    do_instruction

```

Defines:

`store_A_and_next`, used in chunks 192 and 198.  
`store_and_next`, used in chunks 128, 134, 168, 169a, 173b, 175–79, 193, and 195–97.  
`store_zero_and_next`, used in chunks 192 and 197.

Uses SCRATCH2 208, do\_instruction 115, and store\_var 126.

The `print_zstring_and_next` routine prints the z-encoded string at Z\_PC2 to the screen, and then goes to the next instruction.

162b  $\langle$ Print zstring and go to next instruction 162b $\rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

print_zstring_and_next:
    SUBROUTINE

    JSR    print_zstring
    JMP    do_instruction

```

Defines:

`print_zstring_and_next`, used in chunks 188b and 189c.

Uses do\_instruction 115 and print\_zstring 64.

The `inc_var` routine increments the variable in `OPERANDO`, and also stores the result in `SCRATCH2`.

163a  $\langle \text{Increment variable 163a} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```
inc_var:
    SUBROUTINE

        LDA    OPERANDO
        JSR    var_get
        INCW    SCRATCH2
inc_var_continue:
        PSHW    SCRATCH2
        LDA    OPERANDO
        JSR    var_put
        PULW    SCRATCH2
        RTS
```

Defines:

`inc_var`, used in chunks 172c and 180a.

Uses `INCW` 13b, `OPERANDO` 208, `PSHW` 12b, `PULW` 13a, `SCRATCH2` 208, `var_get` 125, and `var_put` 127.

`dec_var` does the same thing as `inc_var`, except does a decrement.

163b  $\langle \text{Decrement variable 163b} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```
dec_var:
    SUBROUTINE

        LDA    OPERANDO
        JSR    var_get
        SUBB    SCRATCH2, #$01
        JMP    inc_var_continue
```

Defines:

`dec_var`, used in chunks 173a and 179b.

Uses `OPERANDO` 208, `SCRATCH2` 208, `SUBB` 16b, and `var_get` 125.

### 14.1.1 Handling branches

Branch information is stored in one or two bytes, indicating what to do with the result of the test. If bit 7 of the first byte is 0, a branch occurs when the condition was false; if 1, then branch is on true.

There are two entry points here, `branch` and `negated_branch`, which are used when the branch condition previously checked is true and false, respectively.

`branch` checks if bit 7 of the offset data is clear, and if so, does the branch, otherwise skips to the next instruction.

`negated_branch` is the same, except that it inverts the branch condition.

```
164a  <Handle branch 164a>≡ (211) 164b>
      negated_branch:
      SUBROUTINE

      JSR    get_next_code_byte
      ORA    #$00
      BMI    .do_branch
      BPL    .no_branch

      branch:
      JSR    get_next_code_byte
      ORA    #$00
      BPL    .do_branch
```

Defines:

`branch`, used in chunks 154c, 158a, 180, 181, and 183b.

`negated_branch`, used in chunks 155a, 158b, 180–84, and 191.

Uses `get_next_code_byte` 39.

If we're not branching, we check whether bit 6 is set. If so, we need to read the second byte of the offset data and throw it away. In either case, we go to the next instruction.

```
164b  <Handle branch 164a>+≡ (211) <164a 165>
      .no_branch:
      AND    #$40
      BNE    .next
      JSR    get_next_code_byte

      .next:
      JMP    do_instruction
```

Uses `do_instruction` 115 and `get_next_code_byte` 39.

With the first byte of the branch offset data in the A register, we check whether bit 6 is set. If so, the offset is (unsigned) 6 bits and we can move on, otherwise we need to tack on the next byte for a signed 14-bit offset. When we're done, SCRATCH2 will contain the signed offset.

```

165  <Handle branch 164a>+≡ (211) <164b 166a>
      .do_branch:
          TAX
          AND      #$40
          BEQ      .get_14_bit_offset

      .offset_is_6_bits:
          TXA
          AND      #$3F
          STA      SCRATCH2
          LDA      #$00
          STA      SCRATCH2+1
          JMP      .check_for_return_false

      .get_14_bit_offset:
          TXA
          AND      #$3F
          PHA
          JSR      get_next_code_byte
          STA      SCRATCH2
          PLA
          STA      SCRATCH2+1
          AND      #$20
          BEQ      .check_for_return_false
          LDA      SCRATCH2+1
          ORA      #$C0
          STA      SCRATCH2+1

```

Uses SCRATCH2 208 and get\_next\_code\_byte 39.

An offset of 0 always means to return false from the current routine, while an offset of 1 means to return true. Otherwise, we fall through.

```

166a  <Handle branch 164a>+≡ (211) <165 166b>
      .check_for_return_false:
          LDA    SCRATCH2+1
          ORA    SCRATCH2
          BEQ    instr_rfalse
          LDA    SCRATCH2
          SEC
          SBC    #$01
          STA    SCRATCH2
          BCS    .check_for_return_true
          DEC    SCRATCH2+1

      .check_for_return_true:
          LDA    SCRATCH2+1
          ORA    SCRATCH2
          BEQ    instr_rtrue

```

Uses SCRATCH2 208, instr\_rfalse 186b, and instr\_rtrue 187a.

We now need to move execution to the instruction at address `Address after branch data + offset - 2`.

We subtract 1 from the offset in SCRATCH2. Note that above, we've already subtracted 1, so now we've subtracted 2 from the offset.

```

166b  <Handle branch 164a>+≡ (211) <166a 166c>
      branch_to_offset:
          SUBROUTINE

          SUBB    SCRATCH2, #$01

```

Defines:

`branch_to_offset`, used in chunk 185a.

Uses SCRATCH2 208 and SUBB 16b.

Next, we store twice the high byte of SCRATCH2 into SCRATCH1.

```

166c  <Handle branch 164a>+≡ (211) <166b 167>
          LDA    SCRATCH2+1
          STA    SCRATCH1
          ASL
          LDA    #$00
          ROL
          STA    SCRATCH1+1

```

Uses SCRATCH1 208 and SCRATCH2 208.



Finally, we add the signed 16-bit `SCRATCH2` to the 24-bit `Z_PC`, and go to the next instruction. We invalidate the zcode page if we've passed a page boundary.

Interestingly, although `Z_PC` is a 24-bit address, we AND the high byte with `#$01`, meaning that the maximum `Z_PC` would be `#$01FFFF`.

```

167  <Handle branch 164a>+≡ (211) <166c
      LDA      Z_PC
      CLC
      ADC      SCRATCH2
      BCC      .continue2
      INC      SCRATCH1
      BNE      .continue2
      INC      SCRATCH1+1

      .continue2:
      STA      Z_PC
      LDA      SCRATCH1+1
      ORA      SCRATCH1
      BEQ      .next

      CLC
      LDA      SCRATCH1
      ADC      Z_PC+1
      STA      Z_PC+1
      LDA      SCRATCH1+1
      ADC      Z_PC+2
      AND      #$01
      STA      Z_PC+2
      LDA      #$00
      STA      ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
      JMP      do_instruction

      .next:
      JMP      do_instruction

```

Uses `SCRATCH1` 208, `SCRATCH2` 208, `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID` 208, `Z_PC` 208, and `do_instruction` 115.

## 14.2 Data movement instructions

### 14.2.1 load

load loads the variable in the operand into the variable in the next code byte.

168a  $\langle \text{Instruction load 168a} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```
instr_load:
  SUBROUTINE

  LDA      OPERANDO
  JSR      var_get
  JMP      store_and_next
```

Defines:

instr\_load, used in chunk 112.

Uses OPERANDO 208, store\_and\_next 162a, and var\_get 125.

### 14.2.2 loadw

loadw loads a word from the array at the address given OPERANDO, indexed by OPERAND1, into the variable in the next code byte.

168b  $\langle \text{Instruction loadw 168b} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```
instr_loadw:
  SUBROUTINE

  ASL      OPERAND1          ; OPERAND1 *= 2
  ROL      OPERAND1+1
  ADDW     OPERAND1, OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
  JSR      load_address
  JSR      get_next_code_word
  JMP      store_and_next
```

Defines:

instr\_loadw, used in chunk 112.

Uses ADDW 15c, OPERANDO 208, OPERAND1 208, SCRATCH2 208, get\_next\_code\_word 47a, load\_address 47b, and store\_and\_next 162a.

### 14.2.3 loadb

loadb loads a zero-extended byte from the array at the address given OPERANDO, indexed by OPERAND1, into the variable in the next code byte.

```
169a  <Instruction loadb 169a>≡ (211)
      instr_loadb:
      SUBROUTINE

      ADDW    OPERAND1, OPERANDO, SCRATCH2 ; SCRATCH2 = OPERANDO + OPERAND1
      JSR     load_address                 ; Z_PC2 = SCRATCH2
      JSR     get_next_code_byte2         ; A = *Z_PC2
      STA     SCRATCH2                    ; SCRATCH2 = uint16(A)
      LDA     #$00
      STA     SCRATCH2+1
      JMP     store_and_next              ; store_and_next(SCRATCH2)
```

Defines:

instr\_loadb, used in chunk 112.

Uses ADDW 15c, OPERANDO 208, OPERAND1 208, SCRATCH2 208, get\_next\_code\_byte2 45, load\_address 47b, and store\_and\_next 162a.

### 14.2.4 store

store stores OPERAND1 into the variable in OPERANDO.

```
169b  <Instruction store 169b>≡ (211)
      instr_store:
      SUBROUTINE

      MOVW    OPERAND1, SCRATCH2
      LDA     OPERANDO

      stretch_var_put:
      JSR     var_put
      JMP     do_instruction
```

Defines:

instr\_store, used in chunk 112.

stretch\_var\_put, used in chunk 172a.

Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 208, OPERAND1 208, SCRATCH2 208, do\_instruction 115, and var\_put 127.

### 14.2.5 storew

`storew` stores `OPERAND2` into the word array pointed to by z-address `OPERANDO` at the index `OPERAND1`.

170  $\langle \text{Instruction storew 170} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

instr_storew:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA    OPERAND1          ; SCRATCH2 = Z_HEADER_ADDR + OPERANDO + 2*OPERAND1
    ASL
    ROL    OPERAND1+1
    CLC
    ADC    OPERANDO
    STA    SCRATCH2
    LDA    OPERAND1+1
    ADC    OPERANDO+1
    STA    SCRATCH2+1
    ADDW   SCRATCH2, Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
    LDY    #$00
    LDA    OPERAND2+1
    STA    (SCRATCH2),Y
    INY
    LDA    OPERAND2
    STA    (SCRATCH2),Y
    JMP    do_instruction

```

Defines:

`instr_storew`, used in chunk 112.

Uses `ADDW 15c`, `OPERANDO 208`, `OPERAND1 208`, `OPERAND2 208`, `SCRATCH2 208`, and `do_instruction 115`.

## 14.2.6 storeb

`storeb` stores the low byte of `OPERAND2` into the byte array pointed to by `z-` address `OPERANDO` at the index `OPERAND1`.

171a  $\langle \text{Instruction storeb 171a} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

instr_storeb:
    SUBROUTINE

        LDA      OPERAND1          ; SCRATCH2 = Z_HEADER_ADDR + OPERANDO + OPERAND1
        CLC
        ADC      OPERANDO
        STA      SCRATCH2
        LDA      OPERAND1+1
        ADC      OPERANDO+1
        STA      SCRATCH2+1
        ADDW     SCRATCH2, Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
        LDY      #$00
        LDA      OPERAND2
        STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

`instr_storeb`, used in chunk 112.

Uses `ADDW 15c`, `OPERANDO 208`, `OPERAND1 208`, `OPERAND2 208`, `SCRATCH2 208`,  
and `do_instruction 115`.

## 14.3 Stack instructions

### 14.3.1 pop

`pop` pops the stack. This throws away the popped value.

171b  $\langle \text{Instruction pop 171b} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

instr_pop:
    SUBROUTINE

        JSR      pop
        JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

`instr_pop`, used in chunk 112.

Uses `do_instruction 115` and `pop 38`.

### 14.3.2 pull

pull pops the top value off the stack and puts it in the variable in OPERANDO.

172a  $\langle \text{Instruction pull 172a} \rangle \equiv$  (211)  
       instr\_pull:  
       SUBROUTINE

```

      JSR      pop
      LDA      OPERANDO
      JMP      stretch_var_put

```

Defines:

      instr\_pull, used in chunk 112.

Uses OPERANDO 208, pop 38, and stretch\_var\_put 169b.

### 14.3.3 push

push pushes the value in OPERANDO onto the z-stack.

172b  $\langle \text{Instruction push 172b} \rangle \equiv$  (211)  
       instr\_push:  
       SUBROUTINE

```

      MOVW     OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
      JSR      push
      JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

      instr\_push, used in chunk 112.

Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 208, SCRATCH2 208, do\_instruction 115, and push 37.

## 14.4 Decrements and increments

### 14.4.1 inc

inc increments the variable in the operand.

172c  $\langle \text{Instruction inc 172c} \rangle \equiv$  (211)  
       instr\_inc:  
       SUBROUTINE

```

      JSR      inc_var
      JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

      instr\_inc, used in chunk 112.

Uses do\_instruction 115 and inc\_var 163a.

### 14.4.2 dec

dec decrements the variable in the operand.

173a  $\langle \text{Instruction dec 173a} \rangle \equiv$  (211)  
instr\_dec:  
SUBROUTINE  
  
JSR dec\_var  
JMP do\_instruction

Defines:

instr\_dec, used in chunk 112.

Uses dec\_var 163b and do\_instruction 115.

## 14.5 Arithmetic instructions

### 14.5.1 add

add adds the first operand to the second operand and stores the result in the variable in the next code byte.

173b  $\langle \text{Instruction add 173b} \rangle \equiv$  (211)  
instr\_add:  
SUBROUTINE  
  
ADDW OPERANDO, OPERAND1, SCRATCH2  
JMP store\_and\_next

Defines:

instr\_add, used in chunk 112.

Uses ADDW 15c, OPERANDO 208, OPERAND1 208, SCRATCH2 208, and store\_and\_next 162a.

### 14.5.2 div

`div` divides the first operand by the second operand and stores the result in the variable in the next code byte. There are optimizations for dividing by 2 and 4 (which are just shifts). For all other divides, `divu16` is called, and then the sign is adjusted afterwards.

```

174  <Instruction div 174>≡ (211)
      instr_div:
          SUBROUTINE

              MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
              MOVW    OPERAND1, SCRATCH1
              JSR      check_sign
              LDA      SCRATCH1+1
              BNE      .do_div
              LDA      SCRATCH1
              CMP      #$02
              BEQ      .shortcut_div2
              CMP      #$04
              BEQ      .shortcut_div4

          .do_div:
              JSR      divu16
              JMP      stretch_set_sign

          .shortcut_div4:
              LSR      SCRATCH2+1
              ROR      SCRATCH2

          .shortcut_div2:
              LSR      SCRATCH2+1
              ROR      SCRATCH2
              JMP      stretch_set_sign

```

Defines:

`instr_div`, used in chunk 112.

Uses `MOVW 12a`, `OPERANDO 208`, `OPERAND1 208`, `SCRATCH1 208`, `SCRATCH2 208`, `check_sign 98b`, and `divu16 103`.



### 14.5.3 mod

`mod` divides the first operand by the second operand and stores the remainder in the variable in the next code byte. There are optimizations for dividing by 2 and 4 (which are just shifts). For all other divides, `divu16` is called, and then the sign is adjusted afterwards.

175     $\langle \textit{Instruction mod 175} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

instr_mod:
    SUBROUTINE

    MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
    MOVW    OPERAND1, SCRATCH1
    JSR     check_sign
    JSR     divu16
    MOVW    SCRATCH1, SCRATCH2
    JMP     store_and_next

```

Defines:

`instr_mod`, used in chunk 112.

Uses `MOVW 12a`, `OPERANDO 208`, `OPERAND1 208`, `SCRATCH1 208`, `SCRATCH2 208`, `check_sign 98b`, `divu16 103`, and `store_and_next 162a`.

### 14.5.4 mul

mul multiplies the first operand by the second operand and stores the result in the variable in the next code byte. There are optimizations for multiplying by 2 and 4 (which are just shifts). For all other multiplies, mulu16 is called, and then the sign is adjusted afterwards.

176    *<Instruction mul 176>*≡ (211)

```
instr_mul:
    SUBROUTINE

    MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
    MOVW    OPERAND1, SCRATCH1
    JSR     check_sign
    LDA     SCRATCH1+1
    BNE     .do_mult
    LDA     SCRATCH1
    CMP     #$02
    BEQ     .shortcut_x2
    CMP     #$04
    BEQ     .shortcut_x4

.do_mult:
    JSR     mulu16

stretch_set_sign:
    JSR     set_sign
    JMP     store_and_next

.shortcut_x4:
    ASL     SCRATCH2
    ROL     SCRATCH2+1

.shortcut_x2:
    ASL     SCRATCH2
    ROL     SCRATCH2+1
    JMP     stretch_set_sign
```

Defines:

instr\_mul, used in chunk 112.

Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 208, OPERAND1 208, SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH2 208, check\_sign 98b, mulu16 100, set\_sign 99, and store\_and\_next 162a.

### 14.5.5 random

**random** gets a random number between 1 and OPERANDO.

177a     $\langle \text{Instruction random 177a} \rangle \equiv$  (211)  
           **instr\_random:**  
           SUBROUTINE

```

MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH1
JSR      get_random
JSR      divu16
MOVW    SCRATCH1, SCRATCH2
INCW    SCRATCH2
JMP      store_and_next

```

Defines:

**instr\_random**, used in chunk 112.

Uses INCW 13b, MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 208, SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH2 208, divu16 103, get\_random 177b, and store\_and\_next 162a.

177b     $\langle \text{Get random 177b} \rangle \equiv$  (211)  
           **get\_random:**  
           SUBROUTINE

```

ROL      RANDOM_VAL+1
MOVW    RANDOM_VAL, SCRATCH2
RTS

```

Defines:

**get\_random**, used in chunk 177a.

Uses MOVW 12a and SCRATCH2 208.

### 14.5.6 sub

**sub** subtracts the first operand from the second operand and stores the result in the variable in the next code byte.

177c     $\langle \text{Instruction sub 177c} \rangle \equiv$  (211)  
           **instr\_sub:**  
           SUBROUTINE

```

SUBW    OPERAND1, OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
JMP      store_and_next

```

Defines:

**instr\_sub**, used in chunk 112.

Uses OPERANDO 208, OPERAND1 208, SCRATCH2 208, SUBW 17b, and store\_and\_next 162a.

## 14.6 Logical instructions

### 14.6.1 and

**and** bitwise-ands the first operand with the second operand and stores the result in the variable given by the next code byte.

178a  $\langle \text{Instruction and 178a} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

instr_and:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA    OPERAND1+1
    AND    OPERANDO+1
    STA    SCRATCH2+1
    LDA    OPERAND1
    AND    OPERANDO
    STA    SCRATCH2
    JMP    store_and_next

```

Defines:

instr\_and, used in chunk 112.

Uses OPERANDO 208, OPERAND1 208, SCRATCH2 208, and store\_and\_next 162a.

### 14.6.2 not

**not** flips every bit in the variable in the operand and stores it in the variable in the next code byte.

178b  $\langle \text{Instruction not 178b} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

instr_not:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA    OPERANDO
    EOR    #$FF
    STA    SCRATCH2
    LDA    OPERANDO+1
    EOR    #$FF
    STA    SCRATCH2+1
    JMP    store_and_next

```

Defines:

instr\_not, used in chunk 112.

Uses OPERANDO 208, SCRATCH2 208, and store\_and\_next 162a.

### 14.6.3 or

or bitwise-ors the first operand with the second operand and stores the result in the variable given by the next code byte.

179a  $\langle \text{Instruction or 179a} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```
instr_or:
SUBROUTINE

LDA      OPERAND1+1
ORA      OPERANDO+1
STA      SCRATCH2+1
LDA      OPERAND1
ORA      OPERANDO
STA      SCRATCH2
JMP      store_and_next
```

Defines:

instr\_or, used in chunk 112.

Uses OPERANDO 208, OPERAND1 208, SCRATCH2 208, and store\_and\_next 162a.

## 14.7 Conditional branch instructions

### 14.7.1 dec\_chk

dec\_chk decrements the variable in the first operand, and then jumps if it is less than the second operand.

179b  $\langle \text{Instruction dec chk 179b} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```
instr_dec_chk:
SUBROUTINE

JSR      dec_var
MOVW     OPERAND1, SCRATCH1
JMP      do_chk
```

Defines:

instr\_dec\_chk, used in chunk 112.

Uses MOVW 12a, OPERAND1 208, SCRATCH1 208, dec\_var 163b, and do\_chk 180a.

### 14.7.2 inc\_chk

`inc_chk` increments the variable in the first operand, and then jumps if it is greater than the second operand.

180a  $\langle \text{Instruction } inc\_chk \text{ 180a} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```
instr_inc_chk:
    JSR      inc_var
    MOVW     SCRATCH2, SCRATCH1
    MOVW     OPERAND1, SCRATCH2

do_chk:
    JSR      cmp16
    BCC      stretch_to_branch
    JMP      negated_branch

stretch_to_branch:
    JMP      branch
```

Defines:

`do_chk`, used in chunk 179b.

`instr_inc_chk`, used in chunk 112.

`stretch_to_branch`, used in chunks 182–84.

Uses `MOVW 12a`, `OPERAND1 208`, `SCRATCH1 208`, `SCRATCH2 208`, `branch 164a`, `cmp16 104b`, `inc_var 163a`, and `negated_branch 164a`.

### 14.7.3 je

`je` jumps if the first operand is equal to any of the next operands. However, in negative node (`jne`), we jump if the first operand is not equal to any of the next operands.

First, we check that there is at least one operand, and if not, we hit a `BRK`.

180b  $\langle \text{Instruction } je \text{ 180b} \rangle \equiv$  (211) 181a>

```
instr_je:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDX      OPERAND_COUNT
    DEX
    BNE      .check_second
    JSR      brk
```

Defines:

`instr_je`, used in chunk 112.

Uses `OPERAND_COUNT 208` and `brk 33c`.

Next, we check against the second operand, and if it's equal, we branch, and if that was the last operand, we negative branch.

```
181a  <Instruction je 180b>+≡ (211) <180b 181b>
      .check_second:
          LDA    OPERANDO
          CMP    OPERAND1
          BNE    .check_next
          LDA    OPERANDO+1
          CMP    OPERAND1+1
          BEQ    .branch

      .check_next:
          DEX
          BEQ    .neg_branch
      Uses OPERANDO 208, OPERAND1 208, and branch 164a.
```

Next we do the same with the third operand.

```
181b  <Instruction je 180b>+≡ (211) <181a 181c>
      LDA    OPERANDO
      CMP    OPERANDO+4
      BNE    .check_next2
      LDA    OPERANDO+1
      CMP    OPERANDO+5
      BEQ    .branch

      .check_next2:
          DEX
          BEQ    .neg_branch
      Uses OPERANDO 208 and branch 164a.
```

And again with the fourth operand.

```
181c  <Instruction je 180b>+≡ (211) <181b
      LDA    OPERANDO
      CMP    OPERANDO+6
      BNE    .check_second      ; why not just go to .neg_branch?
      LDA    OPERANDO+1
      CMP    OPERANDO+7
      BEQ    .branch

      .neg_branch:
          JMP    negated_branch

      .branch:
          JMP    branch
      Uses OPERANDO 208, branch 164a, and negated_branch 164a.
```

### 14.7.4 jg

jg jumps if the first operand is greater than the second operand, in a signed comparison. In negative mode (jle), we jump if the first operand is less than or equal to the second operand.

182a  $\langle \text{Instruction } jg \text{ 182a} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```
instr_jg:
    SUBROUTINE

    MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH1
    MOVW    OPERAND1, SCRATCH2
    JSR     cmp16
    BCC     stretch_to_branch
    JMP     negated_branch
```

Defines:

instr\_jg, used in chunk 112.

Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 208, OPERAND1 208, SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH2 208, cmp16 104b, negated\_branch 164a, and stretch\_to\_branch 180a.

### 14.7.5 jin

jin jumps if the first operand is a child object of the second operand.

182b  $\langle \text{Instruction } jin \text{ 182b} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```
instr_jin:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA     OPERANDO
    JSR     get_object_addr
    LDY     #OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET
    LDA     OPERAND1
    CMP     (SCRATCH2),Y
    BEQ     stretch_to_branch
    JMP     negated_branch
```

Defines:

instr\_jin, used in chunk 112.

Uses OBJECT\_PARENT\_OFFSET 210a, OPERANDO 208, OPERAND1 208, SCRATCH2 208, get\_object\_addr 135, negated\_branch 164a, and stretch\_to\_branch 180a.



### 14.7.6 jl

jl jumps if the first operand is less than the second operand, in a signed comparison. In negative mode (**jge**), we jump if the first operand is greater than or equal to the second operand.

183a  $\langle \text{Instruction jl 183a} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```
instr_jl:
    SUBROUTINE

    MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
    MOVW    OPERAND1, SCRATCH1
    JSR     cmp16
    BCC     stretch_to_branch
    JMP     negated_branch
```

Defines:

instr\_jl, used in chunk 112.

Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 208, OPERAND1 208, SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH2 208, cmp16 104b, negated\_branch 164a, and stretch\_to\_branch 180a.

### 14.7.7 jz

jz jumps if its operand is 0.

This also includes a “stretchy jump” for other instructions that need to branch.

183b  $\langle \text{Instruction jz 183b} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```
instr_jz:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA     OPERANDO+1
    ORA     OPERANDO
    BEQ     take_branch
    JMP     negated_branch
```

take\_branch:

```
JMP     branch
```

Defines:

instr\_jz, used in chunk 112.

take\_branch, used in chunk 191.

Uses OPERANDO 208, branch 164a, and negated\_branch 164a.

### 14.7.8 test

**test** jumps if all the bits in the first operand are set in the second operand.

184a     $\langle \text{Instruction test 184a} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

instr_test:
    SUBROUTINE

    MOVB    OPERAND1+1, SCRATCH2+1
    AND     OPERANDO+1
    STA     SCRATCH1+1
    MOVB    OPERAND1, SCRATCH2
    AND     OPERANDO
    STA     SCRATCH1
    JSR     cmpu16
    BEQ     stretch_to_branch
    JMP     negated_branch

```

Defines:

instr\_test, used in chunk 112.

Uses MOVB 11b, OPERANDO 208, OPERAND1 208, SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH2 208, cmpu16 104a, negated\_branch 164a, and stretch\_to\_branch 180a.

### 14.7.9 test\_attr

**test\_attr** jumps if the object in the first operand has the attribute number in the second operand set. This is done by getting the attribute word and mask for the attribute number, and then bitwise-anding them together. If the result is nonzero, the attribute is set.

184b     $\langle \text{Instruction test attr 184b} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

instr_test_attr:
    SUBROUTINE

    JSR     attr_ptr_and_mask
    LDA     SCRATCH1+1
    AND     SCRATCH3+1
    STA     SCRATCH1+1
    LDA     SCRATCH1
    AND     SCRATCH3
    ORA     SCRATCH1+1
    BNE     stretch_to_branch
    JMP     negated_branch

```

Defines:

instr\_test\_attr, used in chunk 112.

Uses SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH3 208, attr\_ptr\_and\_mask 141, negated\_branch 164a, and stretch\_to\_branch 180a.

## 14.8 Jump and subroutine instructions

### 14.8.1 call

`call` calls the routine at the given address. This instruction has been described in [Call](#).

### 14.8.2 jump

`jump` jumps relative to the signed operand. We subtract 1 from the operand so that we can call `branch_to_offset`, which does another decrement. Thus, the address to go to is the address after this instruction, plus the operand, minus 2.

```
185a  <Instruction jump 185a>≡ (211)
      instr_jump:
      SUBROUTINE

      MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
      SUBB    SCRATCH2, #$01
      JMP     branch_to_offset
```

Defines:

`instr_jump`, used in chunk [112](#).

Uses `MOVW 12a`, `OPERANDO 208`, `SCRATCH2 208`, `SUBB 16b`, and `branch_to_offset 166b`.

### 14.8.3 print\_ret

`print_ret` is the same as `print`, except that it prints a CRLF after the string, and then calls the `rtrue` instruction.

```
185b  <Instruction print ret 185b>≡ (211)
      instr_print_ret:
      SUBROUTINE

      JSR     print_string_literal
      LDA     #$0D
      JSR     buffer_char
      LDA     #$0A
      JSR     buffer_char
      JMP     instr_rtrue
```

Defines:

`instr_print_ret`, used in chunk [112](#).

Uses `buffer_char 59` and `instr_rtrue 187a`.

### 14.8.4 ret

`ret` returns from a routine. The operand is the return value. This instruction has been described in [Return](#).

### 14.8.5 ret\_popped

`ret_popped` pops the stack and returns that value.

186a  $\langle \text{Instruction } \textit{ret\_popped} \text{ 186a} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

    instr_ret_popped:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      pop
        MOVW     SCRATCH2, OPERANDO
        JMP      instr_ret

```

Defines:

`instr_ret_popped`, used in chunk 112.

Uses `MOVW 12a`, `OPERANDO 208`, `SCRATCH2 208`, `instr_ret 132`, and `pop 38`.

### 14.8.6 rfalse

`rfalse` places `#$0000` into `OPERANDO0`, and then calls the `ret` instruction.

186b  $\langle \text{Instruction } \textit{rfalse} \text{ 186b} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

    instr_rfalse:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA      #$00
        JMP      ret_a

```

Defines:

`instr_rfalse`, used in chunks 112 and 166a.

Uses `ret_a 187a`.

### 14.8.7 rtrue

rtrue places #\$0001 into OPERANDO, and then calls the ret instruction.

187a  $\langle$ Instruction rtrue 187a $\rangle \equiv$  (211)  
     instr\_rtrue:  
         SUBROUTINE

```

        LDA    #$01
ret_a:
        STA    OPERANDO
        LDA    #$00
        STA    OPERANDO+1
        JMP    instr_ret

```

Defines:

    instr\_rtrue, used in chunks 112, 166a, and 185b.

    ret\_a, used in chunk 186b.

Uses OPERANDO 208 and instr\_ret 132.

## 14.9 Print instructions

### 14.9.1 new\_line

new\_line prints CRLF.

187b  $\langle$ Instruction new line 187b $\rangle \equiv$  (211)  
     instr\_new\_line:  
         SUBROUTINE

```

        LDA    #$0D
        JSR    buffer_char
        LDA    #$0A
        JSR    buffer_char
        JMP    do_instruction

```

Defines:

    instr\_new\_line, used in chunk 112.

Uses buffer\_char 59 and do\_instruction 115.

### 14.9.2 print

`print` treats the following bytes of z-code as a z-encoded string, and prints it to the output.

188a     $\langle \text{Instruction print 188a} \rangle \equiv$  (211)  
           `instr_print:`  
           SUBROUTINE

          JSR        `print_string_literal`  
           JMP        `do_instruction`

Defines:

`instr_print`, used in chunk 112.

Uses `do_instruction` 115.

### 14.9.3 print\_addr

`print_addr` prints the z-encoded string at the address given by the operand.

188b     $\langle \text{Instr print addr 188b} \rangle \equiv$  (211)  
           `instr_print_addr:`  
           SUBROUTINE

          MOVW       `OPERANDO, SCRATCH2`  
           JSR        `load_address`  
           JMP        `print_zstring_and_next`

Defines:

`instr_print_addr`, used in chunk 112.

Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 208, SCRATCH2 208, `load_address` 47b, and `print_zstring_and_next` 162b.

### 14.9.4 print\_char

`print_char` prints the one-byte ASCII character in OPERANDO.

188c     $\langle \text{Instruction print char 188c} \rangle \equiv$  (211)  
           `instr_print_char:`  
           SUBROUTINE

          LDA        `OPERANDO`  
           JSR        `buffer_char`  
           JMP        `do_instruction`

Defines:

`instr_print_char`, used in chunk 112.

Uses OPERANDO 208, `buffer_char` 59, and `do_instruction` 115.

### 14.9.5 print\_num

print\_num prints the 16-bit signed value in OPERANDO as a decimal number.

189a *⟨Instruction print num 189a⟩*≡ (211)

```

    instr_print_num:
        SUBROUTINE

            MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
            JSR     print_number
            JMP     do_instruction

```

Defines:

instr\_print\_num, used in chunk 112.

Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 208, SCRATCH2 208, do\_instruction 115, and print\_number 106.

### 14.9.6 print\_obj

print\_obj prints the short name of the object in the operand.

189b *⟨Instruction print obj 189b⟩*≡ (211)

```

    instr_print_obj:
        SUBROUTINE

            LDA     OPERANDO
            JSR     print_obj_in_A
            JMP     do_instruction

```

Defines:

instr\_print\_obj, used in chunk 112.

Uses OPERANDO 208, do\_instruction 115, and print\_obj\_in\_A 140.

### 14.9.7 print\_paddr

print\_paddr prints the z-encoded string at the packed address in the operand.

189c *⟨Instruction print paddr 189c⟩*≡ (211)

```

    instr_print_paddr:
        SUBROUTINE

            MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2      ; Z_PC2 <- OPERANDO * 2
            JSR     load_packed_address

            ; Falls through to print_zstring_and_next

```

Defines:

instr\_print\_paddr, used in chunk 112.

Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 208, SCRATCH2 208, load\_packed\_address 48, and print\_zstring\_and\_next 162b.

## 14.10 Object instructions

### 14.10.1 clear\_attr

`clear_attr` clears the attribute number in the second operand for the object in the first operand. This is done by getting the attribute word and mask for the attribute number, and then bitwise-anding the inverse of the mask with the attribute word, and storing the result.

```

190  <Instruction clear_attr 190>≡ (211)
    instr_clear_attr:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      attr_ptr_and_mask
        LDY      #$01
        LDA      SCRATCH3
        EOR      #$FF
        AND      SCRATCH1
        STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        DEY
        LDA      SCRATCH3+1
        EOR      #$FF
        AND      SCRATCH1+1
        STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

`instr_clear_attr`, used in chunk 112.

Uses `SCRATCH1` 208, `SCRATCH2` 208, `SCRATCH3` 208, `attr_ptr_and_mask` 141,  
and `do_instruction` 115.



### 14.10.2 get\_child

`get_child` gets the first child object of the object in the operand, stores it into the variable in the next code byte, and branches if it exists (i.e. is not 0).

```

191  <Instruction get child 191>≡ (211)
      instr_get_child:
          LDA      OPERANDO
          JSR      get_object_addr
          LDY      #OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET

      push_and_check_obj:
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          PHA
          STA      SCRATCH2
          LDA      #$00
          STA      SCRATCH2+1
          JSR      store_var      ; store in var of next code byte.
          PLA
          ORA      #$00
          BNE      take_branch
          JMP      negated_branch

```

Defines:

`push_and_check_obj`, used in chunk 199.

Uses `OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET` 210a, `OPERANDO` 208, `SCRATCH2` 208, `get_object_addr` 135, `negated_branch` 164a, `store_var` 126, and `take_branch` 183b.

### 14.10.3 get\_next\_prop

`get_next_prop` gets the next property number for the object in the first operand after the property number in the second operand, and stores it in the variable in the next code byte. If there is no next property, zero is stored.

If the property number in the second operand is zero, the first property number of the object is returned.

192 *<Instruction get next prop 192>*≡ (211)

```

instr_get_next_prop:
  SUBROUTINE

      JSR      get_property_ptr
      LDA      OPERAND1
      BEQ      .store

    .loop:
      JSR      get_property_num
      CMP      OPERAND1
      BEQ      .found
      BCS      .continue
      JMP      store_zero_and_next

    .continue:
      JSR      next_property
      JMP      .loop

    .store:
      JSR      get_property_num
      JMP      store_A_and_next

    .found:
      JSR      next_property
      JMP      .store

```

Defines:

`instr_get_next_prop`, used in chunk 112.

Uses `OPERAND1` 208, `get_property_num` 144a, `get_property_ptr` 143, `next_property` 145, `store_A_and_next` 162a, and `store_zero_and_next` 162a.

### 14.10.4 get\_parent

`get_parent` gets the parent object of the object in the operand, and stores it into the variable in the next code byte.

193     $\langle$ *Instruction get parent 193* $\rangle \equiv$  (211)

`instr_get_parent:`

      SUBROUTINE

```

      LDA    OPERANDO
      JSR    get_object_addr
      LDY    #OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET
      LDA    (SCRATCH2),Y
      STA    SCRATCH2
      LDA    #$00
      STA    SCRATCH2+1
      JSR    store_and_next
```

Defines:

`instr_get_parent`, used in chunk 112.

Uses `OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET` 210a, `OPERANDO` 208, `SCRATCH2` 208, `get_object_addr` 135,  
and `store_and_next` 162a.

### 14.10.5 get\_prop

`get_prop` gets the property number in the second operand for the object in the first operand, and stores the value of the property in the variable in the next code byte. If the object doesn't have the property, the default value for the property is used. If the property length is 1, then the byte is zero-extended and stored. If the property length is 2, then the entire word is stored. If the property length is anything else, we hit a BRK.

First, we check to see if the property is in the object's properties.

194  $\langle$ Instruction *get prop* 194 $\rangle \equiv$  (211) 195 $\triangleright$

```
instr_get_prop:
    SUBROUTINE

    JSR    get_property_ptr

    .loop:
        JSR    get_property_num
        CMP    OPERAND1
        BEQ    .found
        BCC    .get_default
        JSR    next_property
        JMP    .loop
```

Defines:

`instr_get_prop`, used in chunk 112.

Uses `OPERAND1` 208, `get_property_num` 144a, `get_property_ptr` 143, and `next_property` 145.

To get the default value, we look in the beginning of the object table, and index into the word containing the property default. Then we store it and we're done.

```

195  <Instruction get prop 194>+≡ (211) <194 196>
      .get_default:
          LDY      #HEADER_OBJECT_TABLE_ADDR_OFFSET
          CLC
          LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          ADC      Z_HEADER_ADDR
          STA      SCRATCH1
          DEY
          LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          ADC      Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
          STA      SCRATCH1+1          ; table_ptr
          LDA      OPERAND1            ; SCRATCH2 <- table_ptr[2*OPERAND1]
          ASL
          TAY
          DEY
          LDA      (SCRATCH1),Y
          STA      SCRATCH2
          DEY
          LDA      (SCRATCH1),Y
          STA      SCRATCH2+1
          JMP      store_and_next

```

Uses HEADER\_OBJECT\_TABLE\_ADDR\_OFFSET 210a, OPERAND1 208, SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH2 208,  
and store\_and\_next 162a.

If the property was found, we load the zero-extended byte or the word, depending on the property length. Also if the property length is not valid, we hit a BRK.

```

196  <Instruction get prop 194>+≡ (211) <195
      .found:
          JSR      get_property_len
          INY
          CMP      #$00
          BEQ      .byte_prop
          CMP      #$01
          BEQ      .word_prop
          JSR      brk

      .word_prop:
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          STA      SCRATCH1+1
          INY
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          STA      SCRATCH1
          MOVW     SCRATCH1, SCRATCH2
          JMP      store_and_next

      .byte_prop:
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          STA      SCRATCH2
          LDA      #$00
          STA      SCRATCH2+1
          JMP      store_and_next

```

Uses MOVW 12a, SCRATCH1 208, SCRATCH2 208, brk 33c, get\_property\_len 144b, and store\_and\_next 162a.

### 14.10.6 get\_prop\_addr

`get_prop_addr` gets the Z-address of the property number in the second operand for the object in the first operand, and stores it in the variable in the next code byte. If the object does not have the property, zero is stored.

```

197  <Instruction get prop addr 197>≡ (211)
      instr_get_prop_addr:
          SUBROUTINE

              JSR      get_property_ptr

          .loop:
              JSR      get_property_num
              CMP      OPERAND1
              BEQ      .found
              BCS      .next
              JMP      store_zero_and_next

          .next:
              JSR      next_property
              JMP      .loop

          .found:
              INCW     SCRATCH2
              CLC
              TYA
              ADDAC     SCRATCH2
              SUBW      SCRATCH2, Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
              JMP      store_and_next

```

Defines:

`instr_get_prop_addr`, used in chunk 112.

Uses `ADDAC` 14b, `INCW` 13b, `OPERAND1` 208, `SCRATCH2` 208, `SUBW` 17b, `get_property_num` 144a, `get_property_ptr` 143, `next_property` 145, `store_and_next` 162a, and `store_zero_and_next` 162a.

### 14.10.7 get\_prop\_len

`get_prop_len` gets the length of the property data for the property address in the operand, and stores it into the variable in the next code byte. The address in the operand is relative to the start of the header, and points to the property data. The property's one-byte length is stored at that address minus one.

```

198  <Instruction get prop len 198>≡ (211)
      instr_get_prop_len:
          CLC
          LDA      OPERANDO
          ADC      Z_HEADER_ADDR
          STA      SCRATCH2
          LDA      OPERANDO+1
          ADC      Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
          STA      SCRATCH2+1
          LDA      SCRATCH2
          SEC
          SBC      #$01
          STA      SCRATCH2
          BCS      .continue
          DEC      SCRATCH2+1

      .continue:
          LDY      #$00
          JSR      get_property_len
          CLC
          ADC      #$01
          JMP      store_A_and_next

```

Defines:

`instr_get_prop_len`, used in chunk 112.

Uses `OPERANDO` 208, `SCRATCH2` 208, `get_property_len` 144b, and `store_A_and_next` 162a.



### 14.10.8 get\_sibling

`get_sibling` gets the next object of the object in the operand (its “sibling”), stores it into the variable in the next code byte, and branches if it exists (i.e. is not 0).

199     $\langle \textit{Instruction get sibling 199} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```
instr_get_sibling:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA    OPERANDO
    JSR    get_object_addr
    LDY    #OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET
    JMP    push_and_check_obj
```

Defines:

`instr_get_sibling`, used in chunk 112.

Uses `OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET` 210a, `OPERANDO` 208, `get_object_addr` 135,  
and `push_and_check_obj` 191.

### 14.10.9 insert\_obj

`insert_obj` inserts the object in `OPERANDO` as a child of the object in `OPERAND1`. It becomes the first child in the object.

200     $\langle \text{Instruction insert obj 200} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

instr_insert_obj:
    JSR    remove_obj          ; remove_obj<OPERANDO>
    LDA    OPERANDO
    JSR    get_object_addr     ; obj_ptr = get_object_addr<OPERANDO>
    PSHW   SCRATCH2
    LDY    #OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET
    LDA    OPERAND1
    STA    (SCRATCH2),Y        ; obj_ptr->parent = OPERAND1
    JSR    get_object_addr     ; dest_ptr = get_object_addr<OPERAND1>
    LDY    #OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET ; tmp = dest_ptr->child
    LDA    (SCRATCH2),Y
    TAX
    LDA    OPERANDO           ; dest_ptr->child = OPERANDO
    STA    (SCRATCH2),Y
    PULW   SCRATCH2
    TXA
    BEQ    .continue
    LDY    #OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET ; obj_ptr->sibling = tmp
    STA    (SCRATCH2),Y

    .continue:
    JMP    do_instruction

```

Defines:

`instr_insert_obj`, used in chunk 112.

Uses `OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET` 210a, `OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET` 210a, `OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET` 210a, `OPERANDO` 208, `OPERAND1` 208, `PSHW` 12b, `PULW` 13a, `SCRATCH2` 208, `do_instruction` 115, `get_object_addr` 135, and `remove_obj` 137a.

### 14.10.10 put\_prop

put\_prop stores the value in OPERAND2 into property number OPERAND1 in object OPERAND0. The property must exist, and must be of length 1 or 2, otherwise a BRK is hit.

201  $\langle \text{Instruction put prop 201} \rangle \equiv$  (211)

```

instr_put_prop:
    SUBROUTINE

        JSR      get_property_ptr

    .loop:
        JSR      get_property_num
        CMP      OPERAND1
        BEQ      .found
        BCS      .continue
        JSR      brk

    .continue:
        JSR      next_property
        JMP      .loop

    .found:
        JSR      get_property_len
        INY
        CMP      #$00
        BEQ      .byte_property
        CMP      #$01
        BEQ      .word_property
        JSR      brk

    .word_property:
        LDA      OPERAND2+1
        STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        INY
        LDA      OPERAND2
        STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        JMP      do_instruction

    .byte_property:
        LDA      OPERAND2
        STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

instr\_put\_prop, used in chunk 112.

Uses OPERAND1 208, OPERAND2 208, SCRATCH2 208, brk 33c, do\_instruction 115,  
get\_property\_len 144b, get\_property\_num 144a, get\_property\_ptr 143,  
and next\_property 145.

### 14.10.11 remove\_obj

`remove_obj` removes the object in the operand from the object tree.

202a     $\langle \text{Instruction remove obj 202a} \rangle \equiv$  (211)  
           `instr_remove_obj:`  
           SUBROUTINE

```

JSR      remove_obj
JMP      do_instruction
```

Defines:

`instr_remove_obj`, used in chunk 112.  
 Uses `do_instruction` 115 and `remove_obj` 137a.

### 14.10.12 set\_attr

`set_attr` sets the attribute number in the second operand for the object in the first operand. This is done by getting the attribute word and mask for the attribute number, and then bitwise-oring them together, and storing the result.

202b     $\langle \text{Instruction set attr 202b} \rangle \equiv$  (211)  
           `instr_set_attr:`  
           SUBROUTINE

```

JSR      attr_ptr_and_mask
LDY      #$01
LDA      SCRATCH1
ORA      SCRATCH3
STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
DEY
LDA      SCRATCH1+1
ORA      SCRATCH3+1
STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
JMP      do_instruction
```

Defines:

`instr_set_attr`, used in chunk 112.  
 Uses `SCRATCH1` 208, `SCRATCH2` 208, `SCRATCH3` 208, `attr_ptr_and_mask` 141,  
 and `do_instruction` 115.

## 14.11 Other instructions

### 14.11.1 nop

`nop` does nothing.

**203a**     $\langle \textit{Instruction nop 203a} \rangle \equiv$  (211)  
           **instr\_nop:**  
           SUBROUTINE

**JMP**        **do\_instruction**

Defines:

**instr\_nop**, used in chunk **112**.

Uses **do\_instruction 115**.

### 14.11.2 restart

**restart** restarts the game. This dumps the buffer, and then jumps back to **main**.

**203b**     $\langle \textit{Instruction restart 203b} \rangle \equiv$  (211)  
           **instr\_restart:**  
           SUBROUTINE

**JSR**        **dump\_buffer\_with\_more**

**JMP**        **main**

Defines:

**instr\_restart**, used in chunk **112**.

Uses **dump\_buffer\_with\_more 56** and **main 28a**.

### 14.11.3 restore

`restore` restores the game. See the section [Restoring the game state](#).

### 14.11.4 quit

`quit` quits the game by printing “-- END OF SESSION --” and then spinlooping.

```

204  <Instruction quit 204>≡ (211)
      sEndOfSession:
          DC          "-- END OF SESSION --"

      instr_quit:
          SUBROUTINE

          JSR         dump_buffer_with_more
          STOW        sEndOfSession, SCRATCH2
          LDX         #20
          JSR         print_ascii_string
          JSR         dump_buffer_with_more

      .spinloop:
          JMP         .spinloop

```

Defines:

`instr_quit`, used in chunk 112.

Uses `SCRATCH2` 208, `STOW` 10, `dump_buffer_with_more` 56, and `print_ascii_string` 61b.

### 14.11.5 save

`save` saves the game. See the section [Saving the game state](#).

### 14.11.6 sread

`sread` reads a line of input from the keyboard and parses it. See the section [Lexical parsing](#).

## Chapter 15

# The entire program

```
205a  <boot1.asm 205a>≡  
      PROCESSOR 6502  
  
      <Macros 10>  
      <defines 206b>  
  
      ORG          $0800  
  
      <BOOT1 20a>
```

```
205b  <boot2.asm 205b>≡  
      PROCESSOR 6502  
  
      <Macros 10>  
      <defines 206b>  
  
      main    EQU    $0800  
  
      ORG          $2200  
  
      <BOOT1 20a>  
      <BOOT2 24>  
      Uses main 28a.
```

main.nw 207

$\langle main.asm \text{ 206a} \rangle \equiv$   
PROCESSOR 6502

$\langle Macros \text{ 10} \rangle$   
 $\langle defines \text{ 206b} \rangle$

ORG \$0800

*⟨routines 211⟩*

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \text{defines } 206\text{b} \rangle &\equiv & (205 \ 206\text{a}) \\ \langle \text{Apple ROM defines } 207 \rangle \\ \langle \text{Program defines } 208 \rangle \\ \langle \text{Table offsets } 210\text{a} \rangle \\ \langle \text{variable numbers } 210\text{b} \rangle \end{aligned}$$



```

207  <Apple ROM defines 207>≡ (206b)
      WNDLFT      EQU      $20
      WNDWDTH     EQU      $21
      WNDTOP      EQU      $22
      WNDBTM      EQU      $23
      CH          EQU      $24
      CV          EQU      $25
      IWMDATAPTR  EQU      $26      ; IWM pointer to write disk data to
      IWMSLTNDX   EQU      $2B      ; IWM Slot times 16
      INVFLG      EQU      $32
      PROMPT      EQU      $33
      CSW         EQU      $36      ; 2 bytes

      ; Details https://6502disassembly.com/a2-rom/APPLE2.ROM.html
      IWMSECTOR   EQU      $3D      ; IWM sector to read
      RDSECT_PTR  EQU      $3E      ; 2 bytes
      RANDOM_VAL  EQU      $4E      ; 2 bytes

      INIT        EQU      $FB2F
      VTAB        EQU      $FC22
      HOME        EQU      $FC58
      CLREOL      EQU      $FC9C
      RDKEY       EQU      $FDOC
      GETLN1      EQU      $FD6F
      COUT        EQU      $FDED
      COUT1       EQU      $FDF0
      SETVID      EQU      $FE93
      SETKBD      EQU      $FE89

```

Defines:

CH, used in chunks 56, 71, and 148.  
 CLREOL, used in chunks 56, 71, and 148.  
 COUT, used in chunks 53 and 57b.  
 COUT1, used in chunks 49, 52, and 57a.  
 CSW, used in chunks 53 and 57b.  
 CV, used in chunk 71.  
 GETLN1, used in chunk 73.  
 HOME, used in chunk 50.  
 INIT, used in chunks 22a and 25a.  
 INVFLG, used in chunks 51, 56, 71, and 148.  
 IWMDATAPTR, used in chunks 20b and 21d.  
 IWMSECTOR, used in chunk 21c.  
 IWMSLTNDX, used in chunks 20–22.  
 PROMPT, used in chunk 51.  
 RDKEY, used in chunks 56, 148, 150a, and 151.  
 RDSECT\_PTR, used in chunks 20c and 21d.  
 SETKBD, used in chunks 22a and 25a.  
 SETVID, used in chunks 22a and 25a.  
 VTAB, used in chunk 71.  
 WNDBTM, used in chunks 51 and 56.  
 WNDLFT, used in chunk 51.  
 WNDTOP, used in chunks 50, 51, 56, and 73.  
 WNDWDTH, used in chunks 51, 57a, and 59–61.

208    *(Program defines 208)*≡ (206b)

DEBUG_JUMP	EQU	\$7C	; 3 bytes
SECTORS_PER_TRACK	EQU	\$7F	
CURR_OPCODE	EQU	\$80	
OPERAND_COUNT	EQU	\$81	
OPERAND0	EQU	\$82	; 2 bytes
OPERAND1	EQU	\$84	; 2 bytes
OPERAND2	EQU	\$86	; 2 bytes
OPERAND3	EQU	\$88	; 2 bytes
Z_PC	EQU	\$8A	; 3 bytes
ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR	EQU	\$8D	; 2 bytes
ZCODE_PAGE_VALID	EQU	\$8F	
PAGE_TABLE_INDEX	EQU	\$90	
Z_PC2_H	EQU	\$91	
Z_PC2_HH	EQU	\$92	
Z_PC2_L	EQU	\$93	
ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2	EQU	\$94	; 2 bytes
ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2	EQU	\$96	
PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2	EQU	\$97	
GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR	EQU	\$98	; 2 bytes
LOCAL_ZVARS	EQU	\$9A	; 30 bytes
AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR	EQU	\$B8	
Z_HEADER_ADDR	EQU	\$BA	; 2 bytes
NUM_IMAGE_PAGES	EQU	\$BC	
FIRST_Z_PAGE	EQU	\$BD	
LAST_Z_PAGE	EQU	\$BF	
PAGE_L_TABLE	EQU	\$C0	; 2 bytes
PAGE_H_TABLE	EQU	\$C2	; 2 bytes
NEXT_PAGE_TABLE	EQU	\$C4	; 2 bytes
PREV_PAGE_TABLE	EQU	\$C6	; 2 bytes
STACK_COUNT	EQU	\$C8	
Z_SP	EQU	\$C9	; 2 bytes
FRAME_Z_SP	EQU	\$CB	; 2 bytes
FRAME_STACK_COUNT	EQU	\$CD	
SHIFT_ALPHABET	EQU	\$CE	
LOCKED_ALPHABET	EQU	\$CF	
ZDECOMPRESS_STATE	EQU	\$D0	
ZCHARS_L	EQU	\$D1	
ZCHARS_H	EQU	\$D2	
ZCHAR_SCRATCH1	EQU	\$D3	; 6 bytes
ZCHAR_SCRATCH2	EQU	\$DA	; 6 bytes
TOKEN_IDX	EQU	\$E0	
INPUT_PTR	EQU	\$E1	
Z_ABBREV_TABLE	EQU	\$E2	; 2 bytes
SCRATCH1	EQU	\$E4	; 2 bytes
SCRATCH2	EQU	\$E6	; 2 bytes
SCRATCH3	EQU	\$E8	; 2 bytes
SIGN_BIT	EQU	\$EA	
BUFF_END	EQU	\$EB	
BUFF_LINE_LEN	EQU	\$EC	

<b>CURR_LINE</b>	EQU	\$ED	
<b>PRINTER_CSW</b>	EQU	\$EE	; 2 bytes
<b>TMP_Z_PC</b>	EQU	\$F0	; 3 bytes
<b>BUFF_AREA</b>	EQU	\$0200	
<b>RWTS</b>	EQU	\$2900	

Defines:

AFTER\_Z\_IMAGE\_ADDR, used in chunks 35a, 42, and 45.  
 BUFF\_AREA, used in chunks 52, 53, 59–61, 73, 110, 111, 152b, 153a, 155c, and 156c.  
 BUFF\_END, used in chunks 52, 53, 57a, 59–61, and 73.  
 BUFF\_LINE\_LEN, used in chunks 60b and 61a.  
 CURR\_DISK\_BUFF\_ADDR, never used.  
 CURR\_LINE, used in chunks 50, 56, and 73.  
 CURR\_OPCODE, used in chunks 115, 118–20, and 122.  
 DEBUG\_JUMP, used in chunks 25a and 114.  
 FIRST\_Z\_PAGE, used in chunks 30b, 35b, 43, and 44.  
 FRAME\_STACK\_COUNT, used in chunks 129a and 131–33.  
 FRAME\_Z\_SP, used in chunks 129a and 131–33.  
 GLOBAL\_ZVARS\_ADDR, used in chunks 34, 124, and 126.  
 LAST\_Z\_PAGE, used in chunks 30b, 35b, 43, and 44.  
 LOCAL\_ZVARS, used in chunks 124, 126, 130, 131a, 133b, 153b, and 156b.  
 LOCKED\_ALPHABET, used in chunks 62, 64, 66, 67, 83, 84b, 86a, and 88.  
 NEXT\_PAGE\_TABLE, used in chunks 29, 30a, 35b, and 44.  
 NUM\_IMAGE\_PAGES, used in chunks 32, 35a, 40, and 45.  
 OPERAND0, used in chunks 73, 75, 77b, 78a, 81, 117d, 119a, 121, 128, 129b, 131a, 134, 137–39, 141, 143, 163, 168–79, 181–89, 191, 193, and 198–200.  
 OPERAND1, used in chunks 75–77, 79, 80, 119b, 141, 168–71, 173–84, 192, 194, 195, 197, 200, and 201.  
 OPERAND2, used in chunks 170, 171a, and 201.  
 OPERAND3, never used.  
 OPERAND\_COUNT, used in chunks 115, 117d, 120a, 121, 131a, and 180b.  
 PAGE\_H\_TABLE, used in chunks 29, 30a, 42, 43, and 45.  
 PAGE\_L\_TABLE, used in chunks 29, 30a, 42, 43, and 45.  
 PAGE\_TABLE\_INDEX, used in chunks 40, 42, and 45.  
 PAGE\_TABLE\_INDEX2, used in chunks 42 and 45.  
 PREV\_PAGE\_TABLE, used in chunks 29, 30a, and 44.  
 PRINTER\_CSW, used in chunks 29, 53, and 57b.  
 RWTS, used in chunks 24 and 109.  
 SCRATCH1, used in chunks 31b, 32, 42, 45, 80, 83–86, 88, 89, 91, 93–96, 98b, 100, 103, 104, 106, 109–111, 114, 124, 126, 131a, 133, 138–43, 150b, 166c, 167, 174–77, 179b, 180a, 182–84, 190, 195, 196, and 202b.  
 SCRATCH2, used in chunks 31b, 32, 36–38, 40, 42–45, 47–49, 56, 61b, 63, 67, 71, 82–85, 92–98, 100, 103, 104, 106, 109–111, 114, 116–24, 126–31, 133–44, 146, 148, 150–54, 156, 157, 162, 163, 165–80, 182–86, 188–91, 193, 195–98, 200–202, and 204.  
 SCRATCH3, used in chunks 61b, 65a, 66, 68–70, 75–81, 83, 84, 86c, 88–91, 93–95, 100, 103, 106, 131a, 133, 142a, 154b, 157b, 184b, 190, and 202b.  
 SECTORS\_PER\_TRACK, used in chunks 25a and 109.  
 SHIFT\_ALPHABET, used in chunks 62, 64, 66, and 67.  
 STACK\_COUNT, used in chunks 29, 37, 38, 131b, 132, 153b, and 156b.  
 TMP\_Z\_PC, used in chunk 115.  
 ZCHARS\_H, used in chunks 63 and 67.  
 ZCHARS\_L, used in chunks 63 and 67.  
 ZCHAR\_SCRATCH1, used in chunks 29, 77, 78, 84a, and 85b.  
 ZCHAR\_SCRATCH2, used in chunks 83, 86–89, 91, 94a, and 95.  
 ZCODE\_PAGE\_ADDR, used in chunks 39, 41, and 70b.  
 ZCODE\_PAGE\_ADDR2, used in chunks 45 and 70b.  
 ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID, used in chunks 29, 39, 41, 45, 70b, 129a, 134, 156b, and 167.  
 ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID2, used in chunks 29, 42, 45, 48, 67, and 70b.

ZDECOMPRESS\_STATE, used in chunks 63, 64, and 67.  
 Z.ABBREV\_TABLE, used in chunks 34 and 67.  
 Z.PC, used in chunks 33d, 39, 40, 42, 70b, 115, 124, 129, 133d, 152c, 156b, and 167.  
 Z.PC2\_H, used in chunks 45, 47b, 48, 67, and 70b.  
 Z.PC2\_HH, used in chunks 45, 47b, 48, 67, and 70b.  
 Z.PC2\_L, used in chunks 45, 47b, 48, 67, and 70b.  
 Z.SP, used in chunks 29, 37, 38, 131b, and 132.

210a     $\langle$ Table offsets 210a $\rangle \equiv$  (206b)

HEADER_DICT_OFFSET	EQU	\$08	
HEADER_OBJECT_TABLE_ADDR_OFFSET	EQU	\$0B	
HEADER_STATIC_MEM_BASE	EQU	\$0E	
HEADER_FLAGS2_OFFSET	EQU	\$10	
FIRST_OBJECT_OFFSET	EQU	\$35	
OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET	EQU	\$04	
OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET	EQU	\$05	
OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET	EQU	\$06	
OBJECT_PROPS_OFFSET	EQU	\$07	

Defines:

FIRST\_OBJECT\_OFFSET, used in chunk 136a.  
 HEADER\_DICT\_OFFSET, used in chunk 92.  
 HEADER\_FLAGS2\_OFFSET, used in chunk 73.  
 HEADER\_OBJECT\_TABLE\_ADDR\_OFFSET, used in chunks 136b and 195.  
 HEADER\_STATIC\_MEM\_BASE, used in chunk 154b.  
 OBJECT\_CHILD\_OFFSET, used in chunks 137c, 138b, 191, and 200.  
 OBJECT\_PARENT\_OFFSET, used in chunks 137a, 138c, 182b, 193, and 200.  
 OBJECT\_PROPS\_OFFSET, used in chunks 140 and 143.  
 OBJECT\_SIBLING\_OFFSET, used in chunks 138b, 139a, 199, and 200.

210b     $\langle$ variable numbers 210b $\rangle \equiv$  (206b)

VAR_CURR_ROOM	EQU	\$10
VAR_SCORE	EQU	\$11
VAR_MAX_SCORE	EQU	\$12

Defines:

VAR\_CURR\_ROOM, used in chunk 71.  
 VAR\_MAX\_SCORE, used in chunk 71.  
 VAR\_SCORE, used in chunk 71.

210c     $\langle$ Internal error string 210c $\rangle \equiv$  (211)

```
sInternalError:
    DC          "ZORK INTERNAL ERROR!"
```

Defines:

sInternalError, never used.

211     $\langle \text{routines } 211 \rangle \equiv$  (206a)  
        $\langle \text{main } 28a \rangle$

$\langle \text{Instruction tables } 112 \rangle$

$\langle \text{Do instruction } 115 \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Execute instruction } 114 \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Handle 0op instructions } 116b \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Handle 1op instructions } 117a \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Handle 2op instructions } 119a \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Get const byte } 123a \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Get const word } 123b \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Get var content in A } 125 \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Store to var A } 127 \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Get var content } 124 \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Store and go to next instruction } 162a \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Store var } 126 \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Handle branch } 164a \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction rtrue } 187a \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction rfalse } 186b \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction print } 188a \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Printing a string literal } 70b \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction print ret } 185b \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction nop } 203a \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction ret popped } 186a \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction pop } 171b \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction new line } 187b \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction jz } 183b \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction get sibling } 199 \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction get child } 191 \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction get parent } 193 \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction get prop len } 198 \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction inc } 172c \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction dec } 173a \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Increment variable } 163a \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Decrement variable } 163b \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction print addr } 188b \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction illegal opcode } 161 \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction remove obj } 202a \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Remove object } 137a \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction print obj } 189b \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Print object in A } 140 \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction ret } 132 \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction jump } 185a \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction print paddr } 189c \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Print zstring and go to next instruction } 162b \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction load } 168a \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction not } 178b \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction jl } 183a \rangle$   
        $\langle \text{Instruction jg } 182a \rangle$

<Instruction dec chk 179b>  
 <Instruction inc chk 180a>  
 <Instruction jin 182b>  
 <Instruction test 184a>  
 <Instruction or 179a>  
 <Instruction and 178a>  
 <Instruction test attr 184b>  
 <Instruction set attr 202b>  
 <Instruction clear attr 190>  
 <Instruction store 169b>  
 <Instruction insert obj 200>  
 <Instruction loadw 168b>  
 <Instruction loadb 169a>  
 <Instruction get prop 194>  
 <Instruction get prop addr 197>  
 <Instruction get next prop 192>  
 <Instruction add 173b>  
 <Instruction sub 177c>  
 <Instruction mul 176>  
 <Instruction div 174>  
 <Instruction mod 175>  
 <Instruction je 180b>  
 <Instruction call 128>  
 <Instruction storew 170>  
 <Instruction storeb 171a>  
 <Instruction put prop 201>  
 <Instruction sread 75>  
 <Skip separators 81>  
 <Separator checks 82>  
 <Get dictionary address 92>  
 <Match dictionary word 93>  
 <Instruction print char 188c>  
 <Instruction print num 189a>  
 <Print number 106>  
 <Print negative number 107>  
 <Instruction random 177a>  
 <Instruction push 172b>  
 <Instruction pull 172a>  
 <mulu16 100>  
 <divu16 103>  
 <Check sign 98b>  
 <Set sign 99>  
 <negate 97>  
 <Flip sign 98a>  
 <Get attribute pointer and mask 141>  
 <Get property pointer 143>  
 <Get property number 144a>  
 <Get property length 144b>  
 <Next property 145>  
 <Get object address 135>

<cmp16 104b>  
 <cmpu16 104a>  
 <Push 37>  
 <Pop 38>  
 <Get next code byte 39>  
 <Load address 47b>  
 <Load packed address 48>  
 <Get next code word 47a>  
 <Get next code byte 2 45>  
 <Set page first 44>  
 <Find index of page table 43>  
 <Print zstring 64>  
 <Printing a 10-bit ZSCII character 70a>  
 <Printing a space 65b>  
 <Printing a CRLF 69c>  
 <Shifting alphabets 66>  
 <Printing an abbreviation 67>  
 <A mod 3 105>  
 <A2 table 69a>  
 <Get alphabet 62>  
 <Get next zchar 63>  
 <ASCII to Zchar 83>  
 <Search nonalpha table 90b>  
 <Get alphabet for char 85a>  
 <Z compress 87>  
 <Instruction restart 203b>  
 <Locate last RAM page 36>  
 <Buffer a character 59>  
 <Dump buffer line 55>  
 <Dump buffer to printer 53>  
 <Dump buffer to screen 52>  
 <Dump buffer with more 56>  
 <Home 50>  
 <Print status line 71>  
 <Output string to console 49>  
 <Read line 73>  
 <Reset window 51>  
 <iob struct 108>  
 <Do RWTS on sector 109>  
 <Reading sectors 110>  
 <Writing sectors 111>  
 <Do reset window 31a>  
 <Print ASCII string 61b>  
 <Save diskette strings 147b>  
 <Insert save diskette 146>  
 <Get prompted number from user 148>  
 <Reinsert game diskette 151>  
 <Instruction save 152a>  
 <Copy data to buff 153a>  
 <Instruction restore 155b>

*<Copy data from buff 156c>*  
*<Instruction quit 204>*  
*<Internal error string 210c>*  
*<brk 33c>*  
*<Get random 177b>*

HEX	00	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
HEX	00	FC	19	00	00			



## Chapter 16

# Defined Chunks

*⟨A mod 3 105⟩* [211](#), [105](#)  
*⟨A2 table 69a⟩* [211](#), [69a](#)  
*⟨ASCII to Zchar 83⟩* [211](#), [83](#), [84a](#), [84b](#), [85b](#), [86a](#), [86b](#), [86c](#), [88](#), [89a](#), [89b](#), [89c](#),  
[90a](#), [91](#)  
*⟨Apple ROM defines 207⟩* [206b](#), [207](#)  
*⟨BOOT1 20a⟩* [205a](#), [205b](#), [20a](#), [20b](#), [20c](#), [21a](#), [21b](#), [21c](#), [21d](#), [22a](#), [22b](#), [23a](#), [23b](#)  
*⟨BOOT2 24⟩* [205b](#), [24](#), [25a](#), [25b](#), [26a](#), [26b](#), [27](#)  
*⟨Buffer a character 59⟩* [211](#), [59](#), [60a](#), [60b](#), [61a](#)  
*⟨Check sign 98b⟩* [211](#), [98b](#)  
*⟨Copy data from buff 156c⟩* [211](#), [156c](#)  
*⟨Copy data to buff 153a⟩* [211](#), [153a](#)  
*⟨Decrement variable 163b⟩* [211](#), [163b](#)  
*⟨Detach object 138c⟩* [137a](#), [138c](#)  
*⟨Do RWTS on sector 109⟩* [211](#), [109](#)  
*⟨Do instruction 115⟩* [211](#), [115](#), [116a](#)  
*⟨Do reset window 31a⟩* [211](#), [31a](#)  
*⟨Dump buffer line 55⟩* [211](#), [55](#)  
*⟨Dump buffer to printer 53⟩* [211](#), [53](#)  
*⟨Dump buffer to screen 52⟩* [211](#), [52](#)  
*⟨Dump buffer with more 56⟩* [211](#), [56](#), [57a](#), [57b](#), [58](#)  
*⟨Execute instruction 114⟩* [211](#), [114](#)  
*⟨Find index of page table 43⟩* [211](#), [43](#)  
*⟨Flip sign 98a⟩* [211](#), [98a](#)  
*⟨Get alphabet 62⟩* [211](#), [62](#)  
*⟨Get alphabet for char 85a⟩* [211](#), [85a](#)  
*⟨Get attribute pointer and mask 141⟩* [211](#), [141](#), [142a](#), [142b](#)  
*⟨Get const byte 123a⟩* [211](#), [123a](#)  
*⟨Get const word 123b⟩* [211](#), [123b](#)

⟨Get dictionary address 92⟩ [211](#), [92](#)  
 ⟨Get next code byte 39⟩ [211](#), [39](#), [40](#), [41](#), [42](#)  
 ⟨Get next code byte 2 45⟩ [211](#), [45](#)  
 ⟨Get next code word 47a⟩ [211](#), [47a](#)  
 ⟨Get next zchar 63⟩ [211](#), [63](#)  
 ⟨Get object address 135⟩ [211](#), [135](#), [136a](#), [136b](#)  
 ⟨Get prompted number from user 148⟩ [211](#), [148](#)  
 ⟨Get property length 144b⟩ [211](#), [144b](#)  
 ⟨Get property number 144a⟩ [211](#), [144a](#)  
 ⟨Get property pointer 143⟩ [211](#), [143](#)  
 ⟨Get random 177b⟩ [211](#), [177b](#)  
 ⟨Get var content 124⟩ [211](#), [124](#)  
 ⟨Get var content in A 125⟩ [211](#), [125](#)  
 ⟨Handle 0op instructions 116b⟩ [211](#), [116b](#)  
 ⟨Handle 1op instructions 117a⟩ [211](#), [117a](#), [117b](#), [117c](#), [117d](#), [118a](#), [118b](#)  
 ⟨Handle 2op instructions 119a⟩ [211](#), [119a](#), [119b](#), [120a](#), [120b](#), [120c](#)  
 ⟨Handle branch 164a⟩ [211](#), [164a](#), [164b](#), [165](#), [166a](#), [166b](#), [166c](#), [167](#)  
 ⟨Handle varop instructions 121⟩ [115](#), [121](#), [122](#)  
 ⟨Home 50⟩ [211](#), [50](#)  
 ⟨Increment variable 163a⟩ [211](#), [163a](#)  
 ⟨Insert save diskette 146⟩ [211](#), [146](#), [147a](#), [149a](#), [149b](#), [150a](#), [150b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction add 173b⟩ [211](#), [173b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction and 178a⟩ [211](#), [178a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction call 128⟩ [211](#), [128](#), [129a](#), [129b](#), [129c](#), [130](#), [131a](#), [131b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction clear attr 190⟩ [211](#), [190](#)  
 ⟨Instruction dec 173a⟩ [211](#), [173a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction dec chk 179b⟩ [211](#), [179b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction div 174⟩ [211](#), [174](#)  
 ⟨Instruction get child 191⟩ [211](#), [191](#)  
 ⟨Instruction get next prop 192⟩ [211](#), [192](#)  
 ⟨Instruction get parent 193⟩ [211](#), [193](#)  
 ⟨Instruction get prop 194⟩ [211](#), [194](#), [195](#), [196](#)  
 ⟨Instruction get prop addr 197⟩ [211](#), [197](#)  
 ⟨Instruction get prop len 198⟩ [211](#), [198](#)  
 ⟨Instruction get sibling 199⟩ [211](#), [199](#)  
 ⟨Instruction illegal opcode 161⟩ [211](#), [161](#)  
 ⟨Instruction inc 172c⟩ [211](#), [172c](#)  
 ⟨Instruction inc chk 180a⟩ [211](#), [180a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction insert obj 200⟩ [211](#), [200](#)  
 ⟨Instruction je 180b⟩ [211](#), [180b](#), [181a](#), [181b](#), [181c](#)  
 ⟨Instruction jg 182a⟩ [211](#), [182a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction jin 182b⟩ [211](#), [182b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction jl 183a⟩ [211](#), [183a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction jump 185a⟩ [211](#), [185a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction jz 183b⟩ [211](#), [183b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction load 168a⟩ [211](#), [168a](#)

⟨*Instruction loadb* 169a⟩ 211, [169a](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction loadw* 168b⟩ 211, [168b](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction mod* 175⟩ 211, [175](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction mul* 176⟩ 211, [176](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction new line* 187b⟩ 211, [187b](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction nop* 203a⟩ 211, [203a](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction not* 178b⟩ 211, [178b](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction or* 179a⟩ 211, [179a](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction pop* 171b⟩ 211, [171b](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction print* 188a⟩ 211, [188a](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction print addr* 188b⟩ 211, [188b](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction print char* 188c⟩ 211, [188c](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction print num* 189a⟩ 211, [189a](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction print obj* 189b⟩ 211, [189b](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction print paddr* 189c⟩ 211, [189c](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction print ret* 185b⟩ 211, [185b](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction pull* 172a⟩ 211, [172a](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction push* 172b⟩ 211, [172b](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction put prop* 201⟩ 211, [201](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction quit* 204⟩ 211, [204](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction random* 177a⟩ 211, [177a](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction remove obj* 202a⟩ 211, [202a](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction restart* 203b⟩ 211, [203b](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction restore* 155b⟩ 211, [155b](#), [155c](#), [156a](#), [156b](#), [157a](#), [157b](#), [157c](#), [158a](#),  
[158b](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction ret* 132⟩ 211, [132](#), [133a](#), [133b](#), [133c](#), [133d](#), [134](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction ret popped* 186a⟩ 211, [186a](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction rfalse* 186b⟩ 211, [186b](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction rtrue* 187a⟩ 211, [187a](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction save* 152a⟩ 211, [152a](#), [152b](#), [152c](#), [153b](#), [154a](#), [154b](#), [154c](#), [155a](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction set attr* 202b⟩ 211, [202b](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction sread* 75⟩ 211, [75](#), [76a](#), [76b](#), [76c](#), [77a](#), [77b](#), [78a](#), [78b](#), [79](#), [80](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction store* 169b⟩ 211, [169b](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction storeb* 171a⟩ 211, [171a](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction storew* 170⟩ 211, [170](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction sub* 177c⟩ 211, [177c](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction tables* 112⟩ 211, [112](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction test* 184a⟩ 211, [184a](#)  
 ⟨*Instruction test attr* 184b⟩ 211, [184b](#)  
 ⟨*Internal error string* 210c⟩ 211, [210c](#)  
 ⟨*Load address* 47b⟩ 211, [47b](#)  
 ⟨*Load packed address* 48⟩ 211, [48](#)  
 ⟨*Locate last RAM page* 36⟩ 211, [36](#)  
 ⟨*Macros* 10⟩ 205a, 205b, 206a, [10](#), [11a](#), [11b](#), [12a](#), [12b](#), [12c](#), [13a](#), [13b](#), [14a](#), [14b](#),  
[15a](#), [15b](#), [15c](#), [16a](#), [16b](#), [17a](#), [17b](#), [17c](#), [18](#)  
 ⟨*Match dictionary word* 93⟩ 211, [93](#), [94a](#), [94b](#), [95](#), [96a](#), [96b](#)

<Next property 145> 211, [145](#)  
 <Output string to console 49> 211, [49](#)  
 <Pop 38> 211, [38](#)  
 <Print ASCII string 61b> 211, [61b](#)  
 <Print negative number 107> 211, [107](#)  
 <Print number 106> 211, [106](#)  
 <Print object in A 140> 211, [140](#)  
 <Print status line 71> 211, [71](#)  
 <Print the zchar 68a> 64, [68a](#), [68b](#), [69b](#)  
 <Print zstring 64> 211, [64](#), [65a](#)  
 <Print zstring and go to next instruction 162b> 211, [162b](#)  
 <Printing a 10-bit ZSCII character 70a> 211, [70a](#)  
 <Printing a CRLF 69c> 211, [69c](#)  
 <Printing a space 65b> 211, [65b](#)  
 <Printing a string literal 70b> 211, [70b](#)  
 <Printing an abbreviation 67> 211, [67](#)  
 <Program defines 208> 206b, [208](#)  
 <Push 37> 211, [37](#)  
 <RWTS Arm move delay 230> [230](#)  
 <RWTS Arm move delay tables 231a> [231a](#)  
 <RWTS Postnibble routine 224b> [224b](#)  
 <RWTS Prenibble routine 220> [220](#)  
 <RWTS Primary buffer 232a> [232a](#)  
 <RWTS Read address 227> [227](#)  
 <RWTS Read routine 225> [225](#)  
 <RWTS Read translate table 231d> [231d](#)  
 <RWTS Secondary buffer 232b> [232b](#)  
 <RWTS Seek absolute 229> [229](#)  
 <RWTS Unused area 231c> [231c](#)  
 <RWTS Unused area 2 234b> [234b](#)  
 <RWTS Write address header 233> [233](#)  
 <RWTS Write address header bytes 234a> [234a](#)  
 <RWTS Write bytes 224a> [224a](#)  
 <RWTS Write routine 222> [222](#)  
 <RWTS Write translate table 231b> [231b](#)  
 <Read line 73> 211, [73](#)  
 <Reading sectors 110> 211, [110](#)  
 <Reinsert game diskette 151> 211, [151](#)  
 <Remove object 137a> 211, [137a](#), [137b](#), [137c](#), [138a](#), [138b](#), [139a](#), [139b](#)  
 <Reset window 51> 211, [51](#)  
 <Save diskette strings 147b> 211, [147b](#)  
 <Search nonalpha table 90b> 211, [90b](#)  
 <Separator checks 82> 211, [82](#)  
 <Set page first 44> 211, [44](#)  
 <Set sign 99> 211, [99](#)  
 <Shifting alphabets 66> 211, [66](#)

*⟨Skip separators 81⟩* [211](#), [81](#)  
*⟨Store and go to next instruction 162a⟩* [211](#), [162a](#)  
*⟨Store to var A 127⟩* [211](#), [127](#)  
*⟨Store var 126⟩* [211](#), [126](#)  
*⟨Table offsets 210a⟩* [206b](#), [210a](#)  
*⟨Writing sectors 111⟩* [211](#), [111](#)  
*⟨Z compress 87⟩* [211](#), [87](#)  
*⟨boot1.asm 205a⟩* [205a](#)  
*⟨boot2.asm 205b⟩* [205b](#)  
*⟨brk 33c⟩* [211](#), [33c](#)  
*⟨cmp16 104b⟩* [211](#), [104b](#)  
*⟨cmpu16 104a⟩* [211](#), [104a](#)  
*⟨defines 206b⟩* [205a](#), [205b](#), [206a](#), [206b](#)  
*⟨die 33b⟩* [28a](#), [33b](#)  
*⟨divu16 103⟩* [211](#), [103](#)  
*⟨iob struct 108⟩* [211](#), [108](#)  
*⟨main 28a⟩* [211](#), [28a](#), [28b](#), [29](#), [30a](#), [30b](#), [30c](#), [31b](#), [32](#), [33a](#), [33d](#), [34](#), [35a](#), [35b](#)  
*⟨main.asm 206a⟩* [206a](#)  
*⟨mulu16 100⟩* [211](#), [100](#)  
*⟨negate 97⟩* [211](#), [97](#)  
*⟨routines 211⟩* [206a](#), [211](#)  
*⟨trace of divu16 102⟩* [102](#)  
*⟨variable numbers 210b⟩* [206b](#), [210b](#)

## Chapter 17

# Appendix: RWTs

Part of DOS within BOOT2, and presented without comment. Commented source code can be seen at [cmosher01's annotated Apple II source repository](#).

```
220  <RWTs Prenibble routine 220>≡
    PRENIBBLE:
        ; Converts 256 bytes of data to 342 6-bit nibbles.
        SUBROUTINE

        LDX    #$00
        LDY    #$02

        .loop1:
            DEY
            LDA    (PTR2BUF),Y
            LSR    A
            ROL    SECONDARY_BUFF,X
            LSR    A
            ROL    SECONDARY_BUFF,X
            STA    PRIMARY_BUFF,Y
            INX
            CPX    #$56
            BCC    .loop1
            LDX    #$00
            TYA
            BNE    .loop1
            LDX    #$55

        .loop2:
            LDA    SECONDARY_BUFF,X
            AND    #$3F
            STA    SECONDARY_BUFF,X
            DEX
```

August 4, 2024

main.nw 222

BPL .loop2  
RTS

Defines:

PRENIBBLE, never used.

Uses PRIMARY\_BUFF 232a and SECONDARY\_BUFF 232b.

```

222  <RWTS Write routine 222>≡
      WRITE:
          ; Writes a sector to disk.
          SUBROUTINE

          SEC
          STX     RWTS_SCRATCH2
          STX     SLOTPG6
          LDA     Q6H,X
          LDA     Q7L,X
          BMI     .protected
          LDA     SECONDARY_BUFF
          STA     RWTS_SCRATCH
          LDA     #$FF
          STA     Q7H,X
          ORA     Q6L,X
          PHA
          PLA
          NOP
          LDY     #$04

.write_4_ff:
          PHA
          PLA
          JSR     WRITE2
          DEY
          BNE     .write_4_ff

          LDA     #$D5
          JSR     WRITE_A_BYTE
          LDA     #$AA
          JSR     WRITE_A_BYTE
          LDA     #$AD
          JSR     WRITE_A_BYTE
          TYA
          LDY     #$56
          BNE     .do_eor

.get_nibble:
          LDA     SECONDARY_BUFF,Y

.do_eor:
          EOR     SECONDARY_BUFF-1,Y
          TAX
          LDA     WRITE_XLAT_TABLE,X
          LDX     RWTS_SCRATCH2
          STA     Q6H,X
          LDA     Q6L,X
          DEY
          BNE     .get_nibble

```



```
        LDA    RWTS_SCRATCH
        NOP

.second_eor:
        EOR     PRIMARY_BUFF,Y
        TAX
        LDA     WRITE_XLAT_TABLE,X
        LDX     SLOTPG6
        STA     Q6H,X
        LDA     Q6L,X
        LDA     PRIMARY_BUFF,Y
        INY
        BNE     .second_eor

        TAX
        LDA     WRITE_XLAT_TABLE,X
        LDX     RWTS_SCRATCH2
        JSR     WRITE3
        LDA     #$DE
        JSR     WRITE1
        LDA     #$AA
        JSR     WRITE1
        LDA     #$EB
        JSR     WRITE1
        LDA     #$FF
        JSR     WRITE1
        LDA     Q7L,X

.protected:
        LDA     Q6L,X
        RTS
```

Defines:

WRITE, never used.

Uses PRIMARY\_BUFF 232a, SECONDARY\_BUFF 232b, WRITE1 224a, WRITE2 224a, WRITE3 224a,  
and WRITE\_XLAT\_TABLE 231b.

**224a**  $\langle \text{RWTS Write bytes 224a} \rangle \equiv$

```

WRITE1:
    SUBROUTINE

    CLC

WRITE2:
    SUBROUTINE

    PHA
    PLA

WRITE3:
    SUBROUTINE

    STA    Q6H,X
    ORA    Q6L,X
    RTS

```

Defines:

WRITE1, used in chunk 222.  
 WRITE2, used in chunk 222.  
 WRITE3, used in chunk 222.

**224b**  $\langle \text{RWTS Postnibble routine 224b} \rangle \equiv$

```

POSTNIBBLE:
    ; Converts nibbled data to regular data in PTR2BUF.
    SUBROUTINE

    LDY    #$00

.loop:
    LDX    #$56

.loop2:
    DEX
    BMI    .loop
    LDA    PRIMARY_BUFF,Y
    LSR    SECONDARY_BUFF,X
    ROL    A
    LSR    SECONDARY_BUFF,X
    ROL    A
    STA    (PTR2BUF),Y
    INY
    CPY    RWTS_SCRATCH
    BNE    .loop2
    RTS

```

Defines:

POSTNIBBLE, never used.  
 Uses PRIMARY\_BUFF 232a and SECONDARY\_BUFF 232b.

```

225  <RWTS Read routine 225>≡
      READ:
          ; Reads a sector from disk.
          SUBROUTINE

          LDY      #$20

      .await_prologue:
          DEY
          BEQ      read_error

      .await_prologue_d5:
          LDA      Q6L,X
          BPL      .await_prologue_d5

      .check_for_d5:
          EOR      #$D5
          BNE      .await_prologue
          NOP

      .await_prologue_aa:
          LDA      Q6L,X
          BPL      .await_prologue_aa
          CMP      #$AA
          BNE      .check_for_d5
          LDY      #$56

      .await_prologue_ad:
          LDA      Q6L,X
          BPL      .await_prologue_ad
          CMP      #$AD
          BNE      .check_for_d5
          LDA      #$00

      .loop:
          DEY
          STY      RWTS_SCRATCH

      .await_byte1:
          LDY      Q6L,X
          BPL      .await_byte1
          EOR      ARM_MOVE_DELAY,Y
          LDY      RWTS_SCRATCH
          STA      SECONDARY_BUFF,Y
          BNE      .loop

      .save_index:
          STY      RWTS_SCRATCH

      .await_byte2:

```

```
LDY    Q6L,X
BPL     .await_byte2
EOR     ARM_MOVE_DELAY,Y
LDY     RWTS_SCRATCH
STA     DAT_2755,Y
INY
BNE     .save_index

.read_checksum:
LDY     Q6L,X
BPL     .read_checksum
CMP     ARM_MOVE_DELAY,Y
BNE     read_error

.await_epilogue_de:
LDA     Q6L,X
BPL     .await_epilogue_de
CMP     #$DE
BNE     read_error
NOP

.await_epilogue_aa:
LDA     Q6L,X
BPL     .await_epilogue_aa
CMP     #$AA
BEQ     good_read

read_error:
SEC
RTS
```

Defines:

READ, never used.

read\_error, used in chunk 227.

Uses ARM\_MOVE\_DELAY 230, SECONDARY\_BUFF 232b, and good\_read 227.

```

227  <RWTS Read address 227>≡
      READ_ADDR:
          ; Reads an address header from disk.
          SUBROUTINE

          LDY    #$FC
          STY    RWTS_SCRATCH

      .await_prologue:
          INY
          BNE    .await_prologue_d5
          INC    RWTS_SCRATCH
          BEQ    read_error

      .await_prologue_d5:
          LDA    Q6L,X
          BPL    .await_prologue_d5

      .check_for_d5:
          CMP    #$D5
          BNE    .await_prologue
          NOP

      .await_prologue_aa:
          LDA    Q6L,X
          BPL    .await_prologue_aa
          CMP    #$AA
          BNE    .check_for_d5
          LDY    #$03

      .await_prologue_96:
          LDA    Q6L,X
          BPL    .await_prologue_96
          CMP    #$96
          BNE    .check_for_d5
          LDA    #$00

      .calc_checksum:
          STA    RWTS_SCRATCH2

      .get_header:
          LDA    Q6L,X
          BPL    .get_header
          ROL    A
          STA    RWTS_SCRATCH

      .read_header:
          LDA    Q6L,X
          BPL    .read_header
          AND    RWTS_SCRATCH

```

```
        STA     CHECKSUM_DISK,Y
        EOR     RWTS_SCRATCH2
        DEY
        BPL     .calc_checksum
        TAY
        BNE     read_error

.await_epilogue_de:
        LDA     Q6L,X
        BPL     .await_epilogue_de
        CMP     #$DE
        BNE     read_error
        NOP

.await_epilogue_aa:
        LDA     Q6L,X
        BPL     .await_epilogue_aa
        CMP     #$AA
        BNE     read_error

good_read:
        CLC
        RTS
```

Defines:

    READ\_ADDR, never used.

    good\_read, used in chunks 42, 45, and 225.

Uses read\_error 225.

```

229  <RWTS Seek absolute 229>≡
      SEEKABS:
          ; Moves disk arm to a given half-track.
          SUBROUTINE

          STX     SLOT16
          STA     DEST_TRACK
          CMP     CURR_TRACK
          BEQ     entry_off_end
          LDA     #$00
          STA     RWTS_SCRATCH

      .save_curr_track:
          LDA     CURR_TRACK
          STA     RWTS_SCRATCH2
          SEC
          SBC     DEST_TRACK
          BEQ     .at_destination
          BCS     .move_down
          EOR     #$FF
          INC     CURR_TRACK
          BCC     .check_delay_index

      .move_down:
          ADC     #$FE
          DEC     CURR_TRACK

      .check_delay_index:
          CMP     RWTS_SCRATCH
          BCC     .check_within_steps
          LDA     RWTS_SCRATCH

      .check_within_steps:
          CMP     #$0C
          BCS     .turn_on
          TAY

      .turn_on:
          SEC
          JSR     ON_OR_OFF
          LDA     ON_TABLE,Y
          JSR     ARM_MOVE_DELAY
          LDA     RWTS_SCRATCH2
          CLC
          JSR     ENTRY_OFF
          LDA     OFF_TABLE,Y
          JSR     ARM_MOVE_DELAY
          INC     RWTS_SCRATCH
          BNE     .save_curr_track

```

```

.at_destination:
    JSR      ARM_MOVE_DELAY
    CLC

ON_OR_OFF:
    LDA      CURR_TRACK

ENTRY_OFF:
    AND      #$03
    ROL      A
    ORA      SLOT16
    TAX
    LDA      $C080,X
    LDX      SLOT16

entry_off_end:
    RTS

garbage:
    HEX      AA AO AO

Defines:
    ENTRY_OFF, never used.
    ON_OR_OFF, never used.
    SEEKABS, never used.
    entry_off_end, never used.
Uses ARM_MOVE_DELAY 230, OFF_TABLE 231a, and ON_TABLE 231a.

```

```

230  <RWTS Arm move delay 230>≡
    ARM_MOVE_DELAY:
        ; Delays during arm movement.
        SUBROUTINE

        LDX      #$11

    .delay1:
        DEX
        BNE      .delay1
        INC      MOTOR_TIME
        BNE      .delay2
        INC      MOTOR_TIME+1

    .delay2:
        SEC
        SBC      #$01
        BNE      ARM_MOVE_DELAY
        RTS

```

Defines:  
 ARM\_MOVE\_DELAY, used in chunks 225 and 229.



**231a**     $\langle$ *RWTS Arm move delay tables 231a* $\rangle \equiv$   
           **ON\_TABLE:**  
             HEX           01 30 28 24 20 1E 1D 1C 1C 1C 1C 1C  
  
           **OFF\_TABLE:**  
             HEX           70 2C 26 22 1F 1E 1D 1C 1C 1C 1C 1C  
 Defines:  
     OFF\_TABLE, used in chunk 229.  
     ON\_TABLE, used in chunk 229.

**231b**     $\langle$ *RWTS Write translate table 231b* $\rangle \equiv$   
           **WRITE\_XLAT\_TABLE:**  
             HEX           96 97 9A 9B 9D 9E 9F A6  
             HEX           A7 A8 AC AD AE AF B2 B3  
             HEX           B4 B5 B6 B7 B9 BA BB BC  
             HEX           BD BE BF CB CD CE CF D3  
             HEX           D6 D7 D9 DA DB DC DD DE  
             HEX           DF E5 E6 E7 E9 EA EB EC  
             HEX           ED EE EF F2 F3 F4 F5 F6  
             HEX           F7 F9 FA FB FC FD FE FF  
 Defines:  
     WRITE\_XLAT\_TABLE, used in chunk 222.

**231c**     $\langle$ *RWTS Unused area 231c* $\rangle \equiv$   
           HEX           B3 B3 A0 E0 B3 C3 C5 B3  
           HEX           A0 E0 B3 C3 C5 B3 A0 E0  
           HEX           B3 B3 C5 AA A0 82 B3 B3  
           HEX           C5 AA A0 82 C5 B3 B3 AA  
           HEX           88 82 C5 B3 B3 AA 88 82  
           HEX           C5 C4 B3 B0 88

**231d**     $\langle$ *RWTS Read translate table 231d* $\rangle \equiv$   
           **READ\_XLAT\_TABLE:**  
             HEX           00 01 98 99 02 03 9C 04  
             HEX           05 06 A0 A1 A2 A3 A4 A5  
             HEX           07 08 A8 A9 AA 09 0A 0B  
             HEX           0C 0D B0 B1 0E 0F 10 11  
             HEX           12 13 B8 14 15 16 17 18  
             HEX           19 1A C0 C1 C2 C3 C4 C5  
             HEX           C6 C7 C8 C9 CA 1B CC 1C  
             HEX           1D 1E D0 D1 D2 1F D4 D5  
             HEX           20 21 D8 22 23 24 25 26  
             HEX           27 28 E0 E1 E2 E3 E4 29  
             HEX           2A 2B E8 2C 2D 2E 2F 30  
             HEX           31 32 F0 F1 33 34 35 36  
             HEX           37 38 F8 39 3A 3B 3C 3D  
             HEX           3E 3F

Defines:  
     READ\_XLAT\_TABLE, never used.

**232a**     $\langle RWTs \text{ Primary buffer } 232a \rangle \equiv$   
         **PRIMARY\_BUFF:**

Defines:

PRIMARY\_BUFF, used in chunks **220**, **222**, and **224b**.

**232b**     $\langle RWTs \text{ Secondary buffer } 232b \rangle \equiv$   
         **SECONDARY\_BUFF:**

Defines:

SECONDARY\_BUFF, used in chunks **220**, **222**, **224b**, and **225**.

233 *<RWTS Write address header 233>≡*

**WRITE\_ADDR\_HDR:**

SUBROUTINE

```

SEC
LDA    Q6H,X
LDA    Q7L,X
BMI    .set_read_mode
LDA    #$FF
STA    Q7H,X
CMP    Q6L,X
PHA
PLA

```

.write\_sync:

```

JSR    WRITE_ADDR_RET
JSR    WRITE_ADDR_RET
STA    Q6H,X
CMP    Q6L,X
NOP
DEY
BNE    .write_sync
LDA    #$D5
JSR    WRITE_BYTE3
LDA    #$AA
JSR    WRITE_BYTE3
LDA    #$96
JSR    WRITE_BYTE3
LDA    FORMAT_VOLUME
JSR    WRITE_DOUBLE_BYTE
LDA    FORMAT_TRACK
JSR    WRITE_DOUBLE_BYTE
LDA    FORMAT_SECTOR
JSR    WRITE_DOUBLE_BYTE
LDA    FORMAT_VOLUME
EOR    FORMAT_TRACK
EOR    FORMAT_SECTOR
PHA
LSR    A
ORA    PTR2BUF
STA    Q6H,X
LDA    Q6L,X
PLA
ORA    #$AA
JSR    WRITE_BYTE2
LDA    #$DE
JSR    WRITE_BYTE3
LDA    #$AA
JSR    WRITE_BYTE3
LDA    #$EB

```

```

        JSR      WRITE_BYTE3
        CLC

.set_read_mode:
        LDA      Q7L,X
        LDA      Q6L,X

WRITE_ADDR_RET:
        RTS

Defines:
        WRITE_ADDR_HDR, never used.
Uses WRITE_BYTE2 234a, WRITE_BYTE3 234a, and WRITE_DOUBLE_BYTE 234a.

```

234a     $\langle RWTs$  Write address header bytes 234a  $\rangle \equiv$

```

WRITE_DOUBLE_BYTE:
        PHA
        LSR      A
        ORA      PTR2BUF
        STA      Q6H,X
        CMP      Q6L,X
        PLA
        NOP
        NOP
        NOP
        ORA      #$AA

```

```

WRITE_BYTE2:
        NOP

```

```

WRITE_BYTE3:
        NOP
        PHA
        PLA
        STA      Q6H,X
        CMP      Q6L,X
        RTS

```

Defines:

```

        WRITE_BYTE2, used in chunk 233.
        WRITE_BYTE3, used in chunk 233.
        WRITE_DOUBLE_BYTE, used in chunk 233.

```

234b     $\langle RWTs$  Unused area 2 234b  $\rangle \equiv$

```

HEX      88 A5 E8 91 A0 94 88 96
HEX      E8 91 A0 94 88 96 91 91
HEX      C8 94 D0 96 91 91 C8 94
HEX      D0 96 91 A3 C8 A0 A5 85
HEX      A4

```

# Chapter 18

## Index

.abbreviation: [67](#)  
.already\_initted: [21b](#)  
.check\_for\_alphabet\_A1: [68b](#)  
.check\_for\_good\_2op: [120b](#)  
.crlf: [69c](#)  
.go\_to\_boot2: [22a](#)  
.map\_ascii\_for\_A2: [69b](#)  
.not\_found\_in\_page\_table: [42](#)  
.opcode\_table\_jump: [114](#)  
.set\_page\_addr: [41](#)  
.shift\_alphabet: [66](#)  
.shift\_lock\_alphabet: [66](#)  
.space: [65b](#)  
.z10bits: [70a](#)  
.zcode\_page\_invalid: [40](#)  
ADDA: [14a](#), [93](#), [133b](#)  
ADDAC: [14b](#), [197](#)  
ADDB: [15a](#), [148](#), [150b](#)  
ADDB2: [15b](#), [94a](#), [94b](#), [95](#)  
ADDW: [15c](#), [75](#), [92](#), [143](#), [168b](#), [169a](#), [170](#), [171a](#), [173b](#)  
ADDWC: [15c](#), [16a](#), [100](#)  
AFTER\_Z\_IMAGE\_ADDR: [35a](#), [42](#), [45](#), [208](#)  
ARM\_MOVE\_DELAY: [225](#), [229](#), [230](#)  
A\_mod\_3: [66](#), [86a](#), [88](#), [105](#)  
BOOT1\_SECTOR\_NUM: [21a](#), [21b](#), [21d](#), [23b](#)  
BOOT1\_SECTOR\_XLAT\_TABLE: [21c](#), [22b](#)  
BOOT1\_WRITE\_ADDR: [21a](#), [21d](#), [22a](#), [23b](#)  
BUFF\_AREA: [52](#), [53](#), [59](#), [60a](#), [61a](#), [73](#), [110](#), [111](#), [152b](#), [153a](#), [155c](#), [156c](#), [208](#)  
BUFF\_END: [52](#), [53](#), [57a](#), [59](#), [60b](#), [61a](#), [73](#), [208](#)

BUFF\_LINE\_LEN: [60b](#), [61a](#), [208](#)  
CH: [56](#), [71](#), [148](#), [207](#)  
CLREOL: [56](#), [71](#), [148](#), [207](#)  
COUT: [53](#), [57b](#), [207](#)  
COUT1: [49](#), [52](#), [57a](#), [207](#)  
CSW: [53](#), [57b](#), [207](#)  
CURR\_DISK\_BUFF\_ADDR: [208](#)  
CURR\_LINE: [50](#), [56](#), [73](#), [208](#)  
CURR\_OPCODE: [115](#), [118a](#), [119b](#), [120b](#), [122](#), [208](#)  
CV: [71](#), [207](#)  
DEBUG\_JUMP: [25a](#), [114](#), [208](#)  
ENTRY\_OFF: [229](#)  
FIRST\_OBJECT\_OFFSET: [136a](#), [210a](#)  
FIRST\_Z\_PAGE: [30b](#), [35b](#), [43](#), [44](#), [208](#)  
FRAME\_STACK\_COUNT: [129a](#), [131b](#), [132](#), [133d](#), [208](#)  
FRAME\_Z\_SP: [129a](#), [131b](#), [132](#), [133d](#), [208](#)  
GETLN1: [73](#), [207](#)  
GLOBAL\_ZVARS\_ADDR: [34](#), [124](#), [126](#), [208](#)  
HEADER\_DICT\_OFFSET: [92](#), [210a](#)  
HEADER\_FLAGS2\_OFFSET: [73](#), [210a](#)  
HEADER\_OBJECT\_TABLE\_ADDR\_OFFSET: [136b](#), [195](#), [210a](#)  
HEADER\_STATIC\_MEM\_BASE: [154b](#), [210a](#)  
HOME: [50](#), [207](#)  
INCW: [13b](#), [38](#), [110](#), [111](#), [140](#), [141](#), [163a](#), [177a](#), [197](#)  
INIT: [22a](#), [25a](#), [207](#)  
INVFLG: [51](#), [56](#), [71](#), [148](#), [207](#)  
IWMDATAPTR: [20b](#), [21d](#), [207](#)  
IWMSECTOR: [21c](#), [207](#)  
IWMSLTNDX: [20c](#), [21d](#), [22a](#), [207](#)  
LAST\_Z\_PAGE: [30b](#), [35b](#), [43](#), [44](#), [208](#)  
LOCAL\_ZVARS: [124](#), [126](#), [130](#), [131a](#), [133b](#), [153b](#), [156b](#), [208](#)  
LOCKED\_ALPHABET: [62](#), [64](#), [66](#), [67](#), [83](#), [84b](#), [86a](#), [88](#), [208](#)  
MOVB: [11b](#), [21d](#), [36](#), [86a](#), [129a](#), [131b](#), [132](#), [133b](#), [133d](#), [184a](#)  
MOVW: [12a](#), [31b](#), [100](#), [103](#), [115](#), [117d](#), [119a](#), [119b](#), [129a](#), [131b](#), [132](#), [133d](#), [134](#),  
[140](#), [154b](#), [157b](#), [169b](#), [172b](#), [174](#), [175](#), [176](#), [177a](#), [177b](#), [179b](#), [180a](#), [182a](#),  
[183a](#), [185a](#), [186a](#), [188b](#), [189a](#), [189c](#), [196](#)  
NEXT\_PAGE\_TABLE: [29](#), [30a](#), [35b](#), [44](#), [208](#)  
NUM\_IMAGE\_PAGES: [32](#), [35a](#), [40](#), [45](#), [208](#)  
OBJECT\_CHILD\_OFFSET: [137c](#), [138b](#), [191](#), [200](#), [210a](#)  
OBJECT\_PARENT\_OFFSET: [137a](#), [138c](#), [182b](#), [193](#), [200](#), [210a](#)  
OBJECT\_PROPS\_OFFSET: [140](#), [143](#), [210a](#)  
OBJECT\_SIBLING\_OFFSET: [138b](#), [139a](#), [199](#), [200](#), [210a](#)  
OFF\_TABLE: [229](#), [231a](#)  
ON\_OR\_OFF: [229](#)  
ON\_TABLE: [229](#), [231a](#)  
OPERANDO: [73](#), [75](#), [77b](#), [78a](#), [81](#), [117d](#), [119a](#), [121](#), [128](#), [129b](#), [131a](#), [134](#), [137a](#),

138a, 139a, 141, 143, 163a, 163b, 168a, 168b, 169a, 169b, 170, 171a, 172a, 172b, 173b, 174, 175, 176, 177a, 177c, 178a, 178b, 179a, 181a, 181b, 181c, 182a, 182b, 183a, 183b, 184a, 185a, 186a, 187a, 188b, 188c, 189a, 189b, 189c, 191, 193, 198, 199, 200, 208

OPERAND1: 75, 76a, 77b, 79, 80, 119b, 141, 168b, 169a, 169b, 170, 171a, 173b, 174, 175, 176, 177c, 178a, 179a, 179b, 180a, 181a, 182a, 182b, 183a, 184a, 192, 194, 195, 197, 200, 201, 208

OPERAND2: 170, 171a, 201, 208

OPERAND3: 208

OPERAND\_COUNT: 115, 117d, 120a, 121, 131a, 180b, 208

PAGE\_H\_TABLE: 29, 30a, 42, 43, 45, 208

PAGE\_L\_TABLE: 29, 30a, 42, 43, 45, 208

PAGE\_TABLE\_INDEX: 40, 42, 45, 208

PAGE\_TABLE\_INDEX2: 42, 45, 208

POSTNIBBLE: 224b

PRENIBBLE: 220

PREV\_PAGE\_TABLE: 29, 30a, 44, 208

PRIMARY\_BUFF: 220, 222, 224b, 232a

PRINTER\_CSW: 29, 53, 57b, 208

PROMPT: 51, 207

PSHW: 12b, 100, 103, 163a, 200

PULB: 12c, 131b

PULW: 13a, 100, 103, 163a, 200

RDKEY: 56, 148, 150a, 151, 207

RDSECT\_PTR: 20c, 21d, 207

READ: 225

READ\_ADDR: 227

READ\_XLAT\_TABLE: 231d

ROLW: 17c, 103

RORW: 18, 100

RWTS: 24, 109, 208

SCRATCH1: 31b, 32, 42, 45, 80, 83, 84b, 85b, 86a, 86b, 86c, 88, 89a, 89b, 91, 93, 94a, 94b, 95, 96a, 96b, 98b, 100, 103, 104a, 104b, 106, 109, 110, 111, 114, 124, 126, 131a, 133b, 133c, 138b, 139b, 140, 141, 142a, 142b, 143, 150b, 166c, 167, 174, 175, 176, 177a, 179b, 180a, 182a, 183a, 184a, 184b, 190, 195, 196, 202b, 208

SCRATCH2: 31b, 32, 36, 37, 38, 40, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47a, 47b, 48, 49, 56, 61b, 63, 67, 71, 82, 83, 84a, 85b, 92, 93, 94a, 94b, 95, 96b, 97, 98b, 100, 103, 104a, 104b, 106, 109, 110, 111, 114, 116b, 117d, 118b, 119a, 119b, 120c, 121, 122, 123a, 123b, 124, 126, 127, 128, 129a, 130, 131a, 131b, 133a, 133b, 133c, 133d, 134, 135, 136a, 136b, 137a, 137b, 137c, 138b, 138c, 139a, 139b, 140, 141, 142b, 143, 144a, 144b, 146, 148, 150a, 151, 152c, 153a, 153b, 154a, 154b, 156b, 156c, 157a, 157b, 162a, 163a, 163b, 165, 166a, 166b, 166c, 167, 168b, 169a, 169b, 170, 171a, 172b, 173b, 174, 175, 176, 177a, 177b, 177c, 178a, 178b, 179a, 180a, 182a, 182b, 183a, 184a, 185a, 186a, 188b, 189a, 189c, 190, 191, 193, 195, 196, 197, 198, 200, 201, 202b, 204, 208

SCRATCH3: 61b, 65a, 66, 68a, 69b, 70a, 75, 76b, 76c, 77a, 77b, 78a, 78b, 79, 80, 81, 83, 84a, 84b, 86c, 88, 89a, 89b, 89c, 90a, 91, 93, 94a, 94b, 95, 100, 103, 106, 131a, 133b, 133c, 142a, 154b, 157b, 184b, 190, 202b, 208

SECONDARY\_BUFF: 220, 222, 224b, 225, 232b

SECTORS\_PER\_TRACK: 25a, 109, 208

SEEKABS: 229

SEPARATORS\_TABLE: 82

SETKBD: 22a, 25a, 207

SETVID: 22a, 25a, 207

SHIFT\_ALPHABET: 62, 64, 66, 67, 208

STACK\_COUNT: 29, 37, 38, 131b, 132, 153b, 156b, 208

STOB: 11b, 20c, 25a, 29, 30b, 64, 106, 115, 117d, 120a, 129a, 131a, 134

STOW: 10, 29, 30b, 31b, 56, 100, 103, 106, 110, 111, 116b, 118b, 120c, 122, 128, 133b, 142a, 146, 148, 150a, 151, 152c, 153b, 154a, 156b, 157a, 204

STOW2: 11a, 111

SUBB: 16b, 37, 95, 133c, 163b, 166b, 185a

SUBB2: 17a, 94b

SUBW: 17b, 96b, 97, 177c, 197

TMP\_Z\_PC: 115, 208

VAR\_CURR\_ROOM: 71, 210b

VAR\_MAX\_SCORE: 71, 210b

VAR\_SCORE: 71, 210b

VTAB: 71, 207

WNDBTM: 51, 56, 207

WNDLFT: 51, 207

WNDTOP: 50, 51, 56, 73, 207

WNDWDTH: 51, 57a, 59, 60a, 61a, 207

WRITE: 222

WRITE1: 222, 224a

WRITE2: 222, 224a

WRITE3: 222, 224a

WRITE\_ADDR\_HDR: 233

WRITE\_BYTE2: 233, 234a

WRITE\_BYTE3: 233, 234a

WRITE\_DOUBLE\_BYTE: 233, 234a

WRITE\_XLAT\_TABLE: 222, 231b

ZCHARS\_H: 63, 67, 208

ZCHARS\_L: 63, 67, 208

ZCHAR\_SCRATCH1: 29, 77a, 78a, 78b, 84a, 85b, 208

ZCHAR\_SCRATCH2: 83, 86b, 87, 88, 89b, 91, 94a, 95, 208

ZCODE\_PAGE\_ADDR: 39, 41, 70b, 208

ZCODE\_PAGE\_ADDR2: 45, 70b, 208

ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID: 29, 39, 41, 45, 70b, 129a, 134, 156b, 167, 208

ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID2: 29, 42, 45, 48, 67, 70b, 208

ZDECOMPRESS\_STATE: 63, 64, 67, 208

Z\_ABBREV\_TABLE: 34, 67, 208



Z\_PC: [33d](#), [39](#), [40](#), [42](#), [70b](#), [115](#), [124](#), [129a](#), [129b](#), [133d](#), [152c](#), [156b](#), [167](#), [208](#)  
Z\_PC2\_H: [45](#), [47b](#), [48](#), [67](#), [70b](#), [208](#)  
Z\_PC2\_HH: [45](#), [47b](#), [48](#), [67](#), [70b](#), [208](#)  
Z\_PC2\_L: [45](#), [47b](#), [48](#), [67](#), [70b](#), [208](#)  
Z\_SP: [29](#), [37](#), [38](#), [131b](#), [132](#), [208](#)  
a2\_table: [69a](#), [69b](#), [90b](#)  
ascii\_to\_zchar: [80](#), [83](#)  
attr\_ptr\_and\_mask: [141](#), [184b](#), [190](#), [202b](#)  
boot1: [20a](#)  
boot2: [24](#)  
boot2\_dct: [26a](#), [26b](#)  
boot2\_iob: [24](#), [26a](#)  
boot2\_iob.buffer: [26a](#)  
boot2\_iob.command: [26a](#)  
boot2\_iob.dct\_addr: [26a](#)  
boot2\_iob.sector: [26a](#)  
boot2\_iob.track: [26a](#)  
branch: [154c](#), [158a](#), [164a](#), [180a](#), [181a](#), [181b](#), [181c](#), [183b](#)  
branch\_to\_offset: [166b](#), [185a](#)  
brk: [33a](#), [33b](#), [33c](#), [35a](#), [37](#), [38](#), [161](#), [180b](#), [196](#), [201](#)  
buffer\_char: [59](#), [61b](#), [68a](#), [69c](#), [71](#), [106](#), [107](#), [147a](#), [149a](#), [149b](#), [185b](#), [187b](#),  
[188c](#)  
buffer\_char\_set\_buffer\_end: [58](#), [59](#)  
check\_sign: [98b](#), [174](#), [175](#), [176](#)  
cmp16: [104b](#), [180a](#), [182a](#), [183a](#)  
cmpu16: [104a](#), [104b](#), [184a](#)  
copy\_data\_from\_buff: [156b](#), [156c](#), [157a](#)  
copy\_data\_to\_buff: [152c](#), [153a](#), [153b](#), [154a](#)  
cout\_string: [49](#), [56](#), [71](#), [148](#)  
dct: [108](#), [111](#)  
dec\_var: [163b](#), [173a](#), [179b](#)  
divu16: [103](#), [106](#), [174](#), [175](#), [177a](#)  
do\_chk: [179b](#), [180a](#)  
do\_instruction: [35b](#), [76a](#), [76b](#), [115](#), [131b](#), [162a](#), [162b](#), [164b](#), [167](#), [169b](#), [170](#),  
[171a](#), [171b](#), [172b](#), [172c](#), [173a](#), [187b](#), [188a](#), [188c](#), [189a](#), [189b](#), [190](#), [200](#), [201](#),  
[202a](#), [202b](#), [203a](#)  
do\_reset\_window: [30c](#), [31a](#)  
do\_rwts\_on\_sector: [109](#), [110](#), [111](#)  
dump\_buffer\_line: [55](#), [57a](#), [71](#), [73](#), [148](#), [150a](#), [151](#)  
dump\_buffer\_to\_printer: [53](#), [55](#), [73](#)  
dump\_buffer\_to\_screen: [52](#), [55](#), [71](#)  
dump\_buffer\_with\_more: [56](#), [59](#), [60b](#), [146](#), [148](#), [150a](#), [150b](#), [151](#), [203b](#), [204](#)  
entry\_off\_end: [229](#)  
find\_index\_of\_page\_table: [40](#), [43](#), [45](#)  
flip\_sign: [98a](#), [98b](#)  
get\_alphabet: [62](#), [65a](#), [66](#)

get\_alphabet\_for\_char: [84b](#), [85a](#), [85b](#), [89a](#)  
get\_const\_byte: [117b](#), [119a](#), [119b](#), [121](#), [123a](#)  
get\_const\_word: [117a](#), [121](#), [123b](#)  
get\_dictionary\_addr: [82](#), [92](#), [93](#)  
get\_next\_code\_byte: [39](#), [41](#), [115](#), [116a](#), [123a](#), [123b](#), [124](#), [126](#), [129c](#), [130](#), [164a](#),  
[164b](#), [165](#)  
get\_next\_code\_byte2: [45](#), [47a](#), [169a](#)  
get\_next\_code\_word: [47a](#), [63](#), [168b](#)  
get\_next\_zchar: [63](#), [65a](#), [67](#), [70a](#)  
get\_nonstack\_var: [124](#), [125](#)  
get\_object\_addr: [135](#), [137a](#), [137c](#), [139a](#), [140](#), [141](#), [143](#), [182b](#), [191](#), [193](#), [199](#),  
[200](#)  
get\_property\_len: [144b](#), [145](#), [196](#), [198](#), [201](#)  
get\_property\_num: [144a](#), [192](#), [194](#), [197](#), [201](#)  
get\_property\_ptr: [143](#), [192](#), [194](#), [197](#), [201](#)  
get\_random: [177a](#), [177b](#)  
get\_top\_of\_stack: [124](#)  
get\_var\_content: [117c](#), [119a](#), [119b](#), [121](#), [124](#)  
good\_read: [42](#), [45](#), [225](#), [227](#)  
home: [50](#), [51](#), [146](#)  
illegal\_opcode: [112](#), [116b](#), [118a](#), [120b](#), [122](#), [161](#)  
inc\_sector\_and\_read: [110](#), [157b](#)  
inc\_sector\_and\_write: [111](#), [154b](#)  
inc\_var: [163a](#), [172c](#), [180a](#)  
instr\_add: [112](#), [173b](#)  
instr\_and: [112](#), [178a](#)  
instr\_call: [112](#), [128](#)  
instr\_clear\_attr: [112](#), [190](#)  
instr\_dec: [112](#), [173a](#)  
instr\_dec\_chk: [112](#), [179b](#)  
instr\_div: [112](#), [174](#)  
instr\_get\_next\_prop: [112](#), [192](#)  
instr\_get\_parent: [112](#), [193](#)  
instr\_get\_prop: [112](#), [194](#)  
instr\_get\_prop\_addr: [112](#), [197](#)  
instr\_get\_prop\_len: [112](#), [198](#)  
instr\_get\_sibling: [112](#), [199](#)  
instr\_inc: [112](#), [172c](#)  
instr\_inc\_chk: [112](#), [180a](#)  
instr\_insert\_obj: [112](#), [200](#)  
instr\_je: [112](#), [180b](#)  
instr\_jg: [112](#), [182a](#)  
instr\_jin: [112](#), [182b](#)  
instr\_jl: [112](#), [183a](#)  
instr\_jump: [112](#), [185a](#)  
instr\_jz: [112](#), [183b](#)

`instr_load`: [112](#), [168a](#)  
`instr_loadb`: [112](#), [169a](#)  
`instr_loadw`: [112](#), [168b](#)  
`instr_mod`: [112](#), [175](#)  
`instr_mul`: [112](#), [176](#)  
`instr_new_line`: [112](#), [187b](#)  
`instr_nop`: [112](#), [203a](#)  
`instr_not`: [112](#), [178b](#)  
`instr_or`: [112](#), [179a](#)  
`instr_pop`: [112](#), [171b](#)  
`instr_print`: [112](#), [188a](#)  
`instr_print_addr`: [112](#), [188b](#)  
`instr_print_char`: [112](#), [188c](#)  
`instr_print_num`: [112](#), [189a](#)  
`instr_print_obj`: [112](#), [189b](#)  
`instr_print_paddr`: [112](#), [189c](#)  
`instr_print_ret`: [112](#), [185b](#)  
`instr_pull`: [112](#), [172a](#)  
`instr_push`: [112](#), [172b](#)  
`instr_put_prop`: [112](#), [201](#)  
`instr_quit`: [112](#), [204](#)  
`instr_random`: [112](#), [177a](#)  
`instr_remove_obj`: [112](#), [202a](#)  
`instr_restart`: [112](#), [203b](#)  
`instr_restore`: [112](#), [155b](#)  
`instr_ret`: [112](#), [132](#), [186a](#), [187a](#)  
`instr_ret_popped`: [112](#), [186a](#)  
`instr_rfalse`: [112](#), [166a](#), [186b](#)  
`instr_rtrue`: [112](#), [166a](#), [185b](#), [187a](#)  
`instr_save`: [112](#), [152a](#)  
`instr_set_attr`: [112](#), [202b](#)  
`instr_sread`: [75](#), [112](#)  
`instr_store`: [112](#), [169b](#)  
`instr_storeb`: [112](#), [171a](#)  
`instr_storew`: [112](#), [170](#)  
`instr_sub`: [112](#), [177c](#)  
`instr_test`: [112](#), [184a](#)  
`instr_test_attr`: [112](#), [184b](#)  
`invalidate_zcode_page2`: [48](#)  
`iob`: [108](#), [109](#), [149a](#), [149b](#), [151](#)  
`iob.buffer`: [108](#)  
`iob.command`: [108](#)  
`iob.drive`: [108](#)  
`iob.sector`: [108](#)  
`iob.slot_times_16`: [108](#)  
`iob.track`: [108](#)

is\_dict\_separator: [77b](#), [78b](#), [82](#)  
is\_separator: [78a](#), [81](#), [82](#)  
is\_std\_separator: [77b](#), [82](#)  
load\_address: [47b](#), [140](#), [168b](#), [169a](#), [188b](#)  
load\_packed\_address: [48](#), [67](#), [189c](#)  
locate\_last\_ram\_addr: [36](#)  
main: [25a](#), [28a](#), [31b](#), [32](#), [42](#), [45](#), [203b](#), [205b](#)  
match\_dictionary\_word: [80](#), [93](#)  
mulu16: [100](#), [176](#)  
negate: [97](#), [98a](#), [99](#), [107](#)  
negated\_branch: [155a](#), [158b](#), [164a](#), [180a](#), [181c](#), [182a](#), [182b](#), [183a](#), [183b](#), [184a](#),  
[184b](#), [191](#)  
next\_property: [145](#), [192](#), [194](#), [197](#), [201](#)  
please\_insert\_save\_diskette: [146](#), [152a](#), [155b](#)  
please\_reinsert\_game\_diskette: [151](#), [154c](#), [155a](#), [158a](#), [158b](#)  
pop: [38](#), [124](#), [127](#), [133a](#), [133c](#), [133d](#), [171b](#), [172a](#), [186a](#)  
pop\_push: [125](#), [127](#)  
print\_ascii\_string: [61b](#), [146](#), [148](#), [150a](#), [151](#), [204](#)  
print\_negative\_num: [106](#), [107](#)  
print\_number: [71](#), [106](#), [189a](#)  
print\_obj\_in\_A: [71](#), [140](#), [189b](#)  
print\_status\_line: [71](#), [75](#)  
print\_zstring: [64](#), [67](#), [70b](#), [140](#), [162b](#)  
print\_zstring\_and\_next: [162b](#), [188b](#), [189c](#)  
printer\_card\_initialized\_flag: [53](#)  
prompt\_offset: [147a](#), [147b](#), [148](#), [149a](#), [149b](#)  
push: [37](#), [126](#), [127](#), [129a](#), [130](#), [131b](#), [172b](#)  
push\_and\_check\_obj: [191](#), [199](#)  
read\_error: [225](#), [227](#)  
read\_from\_sector: [31b](#), [32](#), [42](#), [45](#), [110](#)  
read\_line: [73](#), [75](#)  
read\_next\_sector: [110](#), [155c](#), [157a](#)  
remove\_obj: [137a](#), [200](#), [202a](#)  
reset\_window: [31a](#), [51](#)  
ret\_a: [186b](#), [187a](#)  
routines\_table\_0op: [112](#), [116b](#)  
routines\_table\_1op: [112](#), [118b](#)  
routines\_table\_2op: [112](#), [120c](#)  
routines\_table\_var: [112](#), [122](#)  
sDrivePrompt: [147b](#), [149b](#)  
sInternalError: [210c](#)  
sPleaseInsert: [146](#), [147b](#)  
sPositionPrompt: [147a](#), [147b](#)  
sPressReturnToContinue: [151](#)  
sReinsertGameDiskette: [151](#)  
sReturnToBegin: [147b](#), [150a](#)

sScore: [71](#)  
sSlotPrompt: [147a](#), [147b](#), [148](#), [149a](#), [149b](#)  
save\_drive: [147b](#), [149b](#)  
save\_position: [147a](#), [147b](#), [150b](#)  
save\_slot: [147b](#), [148](#), [149a](#)  
search\_nonalpha\_table: [90a](#), [90b](#)  
sector\_count: [24](#), [25a](#)  
separator\_found: [82](#)  
separator\_not\_found: [82](#)  
set\_page\_first: [40](#), [42](#), [44](#), [45](#)  
set\_sign: [99](#), [176](#)  
skip\_separators: [76c](#), [81](#)  
store\_A\_and\_next: [162a](#), [192](#), [198](#)  
store\_and\_next: [128](#), [134](#), [162a](#), [168a](#), [168b](#), [169a](#), [173b](#), [175](#), [176](#), [177a](#), [177c](#),  
[178a](#), [178b](#), [179a](#), [193](#), [195](#), [196](#), [197](#)  
store\_var: [126](#), [162a](#), [191](#)  
store\_zero\_and\_next: [162a](#), [192](#), [197](#)  
stretch\_to\_branch: [180a](#), [182a](#), [182b](#), [183a](#), [184a](#), [184b](#)  
stretch\_var\_put: [169b](#), [172a](#)  
stretchy\_z\_compress: [88](#)  
take\_branch: [183b](#), [191](#)  
var\_get: [71](#), [125](#), [163a](#), [163b](#), [168a](#)  
var\_put: [127](#), [163a](#), [169b](#)  
write\_next\_sector: [111](#), [153b](#), [154a](#)  
z\_compress: [86c](#), [87](#), [88](#), [89b](#), [91](#)